Blue Coat® Systems SG™ Appliance

Volume 11: Command Line Interface Reference

Version SGOS 5.2.2

Blue Coat

Contact Information

Blue Coat Systems Inc.
420 North Mary Ave
Sunnyvale, CA 94085-4121

http://www.bluecoat.com/support/contact.html

bcs.info@bluecoat.com

http://www.bluecoat.com

For concerns or feedback about the documentation: documentation@bluecoat.com

Document Number: 231-02848

Document Revision: SGOS 5.2.2—10/2007

Contents

Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

Chapter 1: Introduction

To configure and manage your Blue Coat® Systems SG appliance, Blue Coat developed a software suite that includes an easy-to-use graphical interface called the Management Console and a Command Line Interface (CLI). The CLI allows you to perform the superset of configuration and management tasks; the Management Console, a subset.

This reference guide describes each of the commands available in the CLI.

Audience for this Document

This reference guide is written for system administrators and experienced users who are familiar with network configuration. Blue Coat assumes that you have a functional network topography, that you and your Blue Coat Sales representative have determined the correct number and placement of the SG appliance, and that those appliances have been installed in an equipment rack and at least minimally configured as outlined in the Blue Coat *Installation Guide* that accompanied the device.

Organization of this Document

This document contains the following chapters:

Chapter 1 – Introduction

The organization of this document; conventions used; descriptions of the CLI modes; and instructions for saving your configuration.

Chapter 2 – Standard and Privileged Mode Commands

All of the standard mode commands, including syntax and examples, in alphabetical order. All of the privileged mode commands (except for the `configure` commands, which are described in Chapter 3), including syntax and examples, in alphabetical order.

Chapter 3 – # Configure Mode Commands

The `#configure` command is the most used and most elaborate of all of the CLI commands.

Related Blue Coat Documentation

You can download the following and other Blue Coat documentation in PDF format from the Blue Coat Web site at www.bluecoat.com. Note that the documents are on WebPower: You must have a WebPower account to access them.

Document Conventions

The following table lists the typographical and CLI syntax conventions used in this manual.

Convention	Definition
Italics	The first use of a new or Blue Coat-proprietary term.
`Courier font`	Command-line text that will appear on your administrator workstation.
`Courier Italics`	A command-line variable that should be substituted with a literal name or value pertaining to the appropriate facet of your network system.
`Courier Boldface`	A CLI literal that should be entered as shown.
{ }	One of the parameters enclosed within the braces must be supplied
[ ]	An optional parameter or parameters.
|	Either the parameter before or after the pipe character can or must be selected, but not both.

SSH and Script Considerations

Consider the following when using the CLI during an SSH session or in a script:

Case Sensitivity. CLI command literals and parameters are not case sensitive.

Command Abbreviations. You can abbreviate CLI commands, provided you supply enough command characters as to be unambiguous. For example:

```
SGOS# configure terminal
```

Can be shortened to:

```
SGOS# conf t
```

Standard and Privileged Modes

The SG appliance CLI has three major modes—*standard*, *privileged*, and *configure privileged*. In addition, privileged mode has several subordinate modes. See the introduction in Chapter 2: "Standard and Privileged Mode Commands" on page 13 for details about the different modes.

- Standard mode prompt: `>`
- Privileged mode prompt: `#`
- Configure Privileged mode prompt: `#(config)`

Accessing Quick Command Line Help

You can access command line help at any time during a session. The following commands are available in both standard mode and privileged mode.

To access a comprehensive list of mode-specific commands:

Type `help` or `?` at the prompt.

The `help` command displays how to use CLI help. For example:

```
SGOS> help
Help may be requested at any point in a command
by typing a question mark '?'.
1. For a list of available commands, enter '?' at
   the prompt.
2. For a list of arguments applicable to a command,
   precede the '?' with a space (e.g. 'show ?')
3. For help completing a command, do not precede
   the '?' with a space (e.g. 'sh?')
```

The `?` command displays the available commands. For example:

```
SGOS> ?
  display                 Display a text based url
  enable                  Turn on privileged commands
  exit                    Exit command line interface
  help                    Information on help
  ping                    Send echo messages
  show                    Show running system information
  traceroute              Trace route to destination
```

To access a command-specific parameter list:

Type the command name, followed by a space, followed by a question mark.

Note that you must be in the correct mode—standard or privileged—to access the appropriate help information. For example, to get command completion help for `pcap`:

```
SGOS# pcap ?
  bridge                      Setup the packet capture mode for bridges
  filter                      Setup the current capture filter
.
.
.
```

To get command completion for configuring the time:

```
SGOS#(config) clock ?
  day                          Set UTC day
  hour                         Set UTC hour
.
.
.
```

To access the correct spelling and syntax, given a partial command:

Type the first letter, or more, of the command, followed by a question mark (no spaces).

Note that you must be in the correct mode—standard or privileged—to access the appropriate help information. For example:

```
SGOS# p?
pcap   ping   purge-dns-cache
```

Chapter 2: Standard and Privileged Mode Commands

This chapter describes and provides examples for the Blue Coat SG appliance standard and privileged mode CLI commands. These modes have fewer permissions than enabled mode commands.

- Privileged Mode Commands

  Privileged mode provides a set of commands that enable you to view, manage, and change SG appliance settings for features such as log files, authentication, caching, DNS, HTTPS, packet capture filters, and security. You can cannot configure functionality such as SSL Proxy, HTTP compression, and the like.

  The prompt changes from a greater than sign (>) to a pound sign (#), acting as an indicator that you are in privileged mode .

  Enter privileged mode from standard mode by using the enable command:

  ```
  SGOS> enable
  Enable Password:********
  SGOS#
  ```

- Configuration Mode Commands

  The `configure` command, available only in enabled mode, allows you to configure the Blue Coat SG appliance settings from your current terminal session (`configure terminal`), or by loading a text file of configuration settings from the network (`configure network`). Enabled Mode commands are discussed in **Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands** on page 87.

  The prompt changes from a pound sign (#) to a #(config) prompt, acting as an indicator that you are in configuration mode .

  Enter configuration mode from privileged mode by using the configure command:

  ```
  SGOS# conf t
  SGOS#(config)
  ```

No password is needed to enter enabled mode.

Standard Mode Commands

Standard mode is the default mode when you first log on. From standard mode, you can view but not change configuration settings. This mode can be password protected, but it is not required.

The standard mode prompt is a greater-than sign; for example:

```
ssh> ssh -l username IP_address
password: ******
SGOS>
```

Commands available in standard mode are:

> exit on page 17
Exits Standard mode.

> help on page 18

> ping on page 19
Verifies that the system at hostname or IP address is active.

> show on page 20
Displays system information.

> traceroute on page 38
Traces the route to a destination.

> display

Synopsis

Use this command to display the content (such as HTML or Javascript) for the specified URL. This content is displayed one screen at a time. "—More—" at the bottom of the terminal screen indicates that there is additional code. Press the <spacebar> to display the next batch of content; press <Enter> to display one additional line of content.

This command is used for general HTTP connectivity testing

Syntax

> **display** *url*

where *url* is a valid, fully-qualified text Web address.

Example

```
SGOS> display http://www.bluecoat.com
10.9.59.243 - Blue Coat SG200>display http://www.bluecoat.com
<!DOCTYPE HTML PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD HTML 4.01 Transitional//EN"
"http://www.w3.org/TR/html4/loose.dtd">
<HTML>
<HEAD>
<TITLE>Blue Coat Systems</TITLE>
<META http-equiv="Content-Type" content="text/html; charset=iso-8859-1">
<META NAME="keywords" CONTENT="spyware WAN application spyware removal spy ware
spyware remover application delivery to branch office accelerate performance
applications remove spyware spyware application delivery secure application
acceleration control SSL threat anti-virus protection WAN optimization AV
appliance spyware blocker application acceleration distributed security
application performance spyware killer spyware WebFilter protection CIFS MAPI
streaming video Web application security branch offices secure endpoint
protection SSL policy control remote user acceleration WAN delivery application
performance WebFilter endpoint security fast WAN policy control spyware detection
spyware eliminator block endpoint security spyware secure MAPI appliances SSL AV
policy control stop spyware remove AV appliance SSL proxy Http secure Web
application acceleration encryption Proxy Internet Proxy Internet Proxy Cache
security proxy cache proxy server CIFS proxy servers branch office Web proxy
appliance enterprise data center accelerate WAN and CIFS and MAPI and streaming
video policy protection blue coat Web proxy Internet Web AV security systems blue
coat branch office anti-virus performance blue coat remote users WAN performance
acceleration Internet MAPI monitoring AV endpoint Internet application delivery
management endpoint protection and security and acceleration of application
content delivery with policy control Internet CIFS Web application filtering
content filtering Web filtering web filter WAN filtered internet application
acceleration">
    .
    .
    .
```

> enable

Synopsis

Use this command to enter Privileged mode. Privileged mode commands enable you to view and change your configuration settings. A password is always required.

Syntax

```
> enable
```

The `enable` command has no parameters or subcommands.

For More Information

- **# disable** on page 47
- **#(config) security username** on page 302
- **#(config) security password and hashed_password** on page 286

Example

```
SGOS> enable
Enable Password:******
SGOS# conf t
SGOS(config)
```

Where `conf t` is a shortcut to typing `configure terminal`.

> exit

Synopsis

Use this command to exit the CLI. In privileged and configuration mode, `exit` returns you to the previous prompt.

Syntax

```
> exit
```

The `exit` command has no parameters or subcommands.

Example

```
SGOS> exit
```

> help

See Accessing Quick Command Line Help on page 11 for information about this command.

> ping

Synopsis

Use this command to verify whether a particular host is reachable across a network.

Syntax

```
> ping {hostname | ip_address}
```

Subcommands

> ping *hostname*
Specifies the name of the host you want to verify.

> ping *ip_address*
Specifies the IP address you want to verify.

Example

```
SGOS> ping 10.25.36.47
Type escape sequence to abort.
Sending 5, 64-byte ICMP Echos to 10.25.36.47, timeout is 2 seconds:
!!!!! Success rate is 100 percent (5/5), round-trip min/avg/max = 0/0/0 ms
Number of duplicate packets received = 0
```

> show

Synopsis

Use this command to display system information. You cannot view all show commands, here, only those available in the standard mode. You must be in privileged mode to show commands available.

Syntax

> show [*subcommands*]

Subcommands

Note: Hyperlinked (blue) options contain additional information.

> show accelerated-pac
Displays accelerated PAC file information.

> show access-log on page 25
Displays the current access log settings.

> show arp-table
Displays TCP/IP ARP table information.

> show bandwidth-gain
Displays bandwidth gain status, mode, and the status of the "substitute get for get-if-modified-since," "substitute get for HTTP 1.1 conditional get," and "never refresh before specified object expiry" features.

> show bandwidth-management on page 26
Displays bandwidth management configuration and statistics information.

> show bridge on page 27
Displays information about bridging on the system.

> show caching
Displays data regarding cache refresh rates and settings and caching policies.

> show cifs
Displays CIFS settings

> show clock
Displays the current SG appliance time setting.

> show commands on page 28
Displays the available CLI commands.

> show console-services
Displays information on the console services enabled or disabled on the system.

> show content-distribution
Displays the average sizes of objects in the cache.

> show cpu
Displays CPU usage.

> show cpu-monitor
Displays the state of the CPU monitor.

> show diagnostics on page 29
Displays remote diagnostics information.

> show disk on page 30
Displays disk information, including slot number, vendor, product ID, revision and serial number, capacity, and status, about all disks or a specified disk.

> show dns
Displays primary and alternate DNS server data.

> show download-paths
Displays downloaded configuration path information, including the policy list, accelerated PAC file, HTTP error page, ICP settings, RIP settings, static route table, upgrade image, and WCCP settings.

> show efficiency
Displays efficiency statistics by objects and by bytes, as well as information about non-cacheable objects and access patterns.

> show epmapper [statistics]
Displays proxy settings or statistics.

> show event-log [configuration]
Show the event-log configuration.

> show exceptions on page 31
Displays all exceptions or just the built-in or user-defined exception you specify.

> show external-services [statistics]
Displays external services or external services statistics information.

> show failover [*group_address*]
Displays failover settings for the specified group or all groups.

> show forwarding
Displays advanced forwarding settings, including download-via-forwarding, health check, and load balancing status, and the definition of forwarding hosts/groups and advanced forwarding rules.

> show ftp
Displays the FTP settings on the system.

> show health-checks
Displays health check information.

> show hostname
Displays the current hostname, IP address, and type.

> show http
Displays HTTP configuration information.

> show http-stats
Displays HTTP statistics, including HTTP statistics version number, number of connections accepted by HTTP, number of persistent connections that were reused, and the number of active client connections.

> show icp-settings
Displays ICP settings.

> show identd
Displays IDENTD service settings.

> show im on page 33
Displays IM information

> show installed-systems
Displays SG appliance system information, listing the current five version and release numbers, boot and lock status, and timestamp information.

> show interface {all | *interface_number*}
Displays interface status and configuration information.

> show ip-default-gateway
Specifies the default IP gateway.

> show ip-route-table
Displays route table information.

> show ip-rts-table
Displays return-to-sender route table information.

> show ip-stats on page 34
Displays TCP/IP statistics

>show licenses
Displays license information.

> show mapi
Displays settings for the MAPI proxy.

> show netbios
Displays NETBIOS settings.

> show ntp
Displays NTP servers status and information.

> show p2p [statistics]
Displays P2P statistics

> show policy [listing | order |policy]
Displays current state of the policy.

> show profile
Displays the system profile.

> show resources
Displays allocation of disk and memory resources.

> show restart
Displays system restart settings, including core image information and compression status.

> show return-to-sender
Displays "return to sender" inbound and outbound settings.

> show rip {default-route | parameters| routes | statistics}
Displays information on RIP settings, including parameters and configuration, RIP routes, and RIP statistics.

> show sessions
Displays information about the CLI session.

> show shell
Displays the settings for the shell, including the maximum connections, the prompt, and the realm- and welcome-banners.

> show snmp
Displays SNMP statistics, including status and MIB variable and trap information

> show socks-gateways
Displays SOCKS gateway settings.

> show socks-machine-id
Displays the identification of the secure sockets machine.

> show socks-proxy
Displays SOCKS proxy settings.

> show sources on page 35
Displays source listings for installable lists, such as the license key, policy files, ICP settings, RIP settings, static route table, and WCCP settings files.

> show ssl on page 36
Displays ssl settings.

> show static-routes
Displays static route table information.

> show status
Displays current system status information, including configuration information and general status information.

> show streaming **on page 37**
Displays QuickTime, RealNetworks, or Microsoft Windows Media information, and client and total bandwidth configurations and usage.

> show tcp-ip
Displays TCP-IP parameters.

> show tcp-rtt
Displays default TCP round trip time ticks.

> show terminal
Displays terminal configuration parameters and subcommands.

> show timezones
Displays timezones used.

> show user-authentication
Displays Authenticator Credential Cache Statistics, including credential cache information, maximum number of clients queued for cache entry, and the length of the longest chain in the hash table.

> show version
Displays SG appliance hardware and software version and release information and backplane PIC status.

> show virtual-ip
Displays the current virtual IP addresses

> show wccp {configuration | statistics}
Displays WCCP configuration and statistics information.

Examples

```
SGOS> show caching
Refresh:
     Estimated access freshness is 100.0%
     Let the ProxySG Appliance manage refresh bandwidth
     Current bandwidth used is 0 kilobits/sec
Policies:
     Do not cache objects larger than 1024 megabytes
     Cache negative responses for 0 minutes
     Let the ProxySG Appliance manage freshness
FTP caching:
     Caching FTP objects is enabled
     FTP objects with last modified date, cached for 10% of last modified time
     FTP objects without last modified date, initially cached for 24 hours
SGOS> show resources
Disk resources:
     Maximum objects supported:   1119930
     Cached Objects:              0
     Disk used by system objects: 537533440
     Disk used by access log:     0
     Total disk installed:        18210036736
```

```
Memory resources:
     In use by cache:             699203584
     In use by system:            83230176
     In use by network:           22872608
     Total RAM installed:         805306368
```

```
SGOS> show failover configuration group_address
Failover Config
Group Address: 10.25.36.47
     Multicast Address    : 224.1.2.3
     Local Address        : 10.9.17.159
     Secret               : none
     Advertisement Interval: 40
     Priority             : 100
     Current State        : DISABLED
     Flags                : V M
```

Three flags exist, set as you configure the group.

V—Specifies the group name is a virtual IP address.

R—Specifies the group name is a physical IP address

M—Specifies this machine can be configured to be the master if it is available

> show access-log

Synopsis

Displays the current access log settings.

Syntax

> **show access-log** [*subcommands*]

Subcommands

> **show access-log default-logging**
Display the access log default policy.

> show access-log format brief
Displays the access log format names.

> show access-log format *format_name*
Displays the access log with the specified *format_name*.

> show access-log format
Displays the access-log formats for all log types.

> show access-log log brief
Displays the access log log names.

> show access-log log *log_name*
Displays the access log with the specified *log_name*.

> show access-log log
Displays the access-log for all logs.

> show access-log statistics *log_name*
Displays access-log statistics for the specific *log_name*.

> show access-log statistics
Displays all access-log statistics.

For More Information

- *Volume 8: Access Logging*

Example

```
> show access-log format brief
Formats:
squid
ncsa
main
im
streaming
websense
surfcontrol
smartreporter
surfcontrolv5
p2p
ssl
cifs
mapi
```

> show bandwidth-management

Synopsis

Displays the bandwidth management state (enabled or disabled) or statistics.

Syntax

```
> show bandwidth-management {configuration | statistics}
```

Subcommands

> show bandwidth-management configuration *bandwidth_class*
Displays the bandwidth-management configuration for the specified bandwidth class . If you do not specify a bandwidth class, displays the bandwidth-management configuration for the system.

> show bandwidth-management statistics *bandwidth_class*
Displays the bandwidth-management statistics for the specified bandwidth class. If you do not specify a bandwidth class, displays the bandwidth-management statistics for the system.

For More Information

- *Volume 5: Advanced Networking*

Example

```
> show bandwidth-management configuration
Bandwidth Management Enabled
```

> show bridge

Synopsis

Displays bridge configuration and statistics.

Syntax

> **show bridge** [*subcommands*]

Subcommands

> **show bridge configuration** *[bridge_name]*
Displays the bridge configuration for the specified *bridge_name* or for all interfaces on the system.

> **show bridge fwtable** *[bridge_name]*
Displays the bridge forwarding table for the specified *bridge_name* or for all interfaces on the system.

> **show bridge statistics** *[bridge_name]*
Displays the bridge statistics for the specified *bridge_name* or for all interfaces on the system.

For More Information

- *Volume 1: Getting Started*

Example

```
> show bridge configuration
Bridge passthru-0 configuration:
  Interface 0:0
    Internet address: 10.9.59.246
    Internet subnet:  255.255.255.0
    MTU size:         1500
    Spanning tree:    disabled
    Allow intercept:  enabled
    Reject inbound:   disabled
    Status:           autosensed full duplex, 100 megabits/sec network
  Interface 0:1
    MTU size:         1500
    Spanning tree:    disabled
    Allow intercept:  enabled
    Reject inbound:   disabled
    Status:           autosensed no link
```

> show commands

Synopsis

Displays the available CLI commands.

Syntax

```
> show commands [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

> show commands delimited [all | privileged]
Delimited displays commands so they can be parsed.

> show commands formatted [all | privileged]
Formatted displays commands so they can be viewed easily.

Example

```
> show commands formatted
1:show                          Show running system information
  2:access-log                  Access log settings
    3:log                       Show Access log configuration
      4:brief                   Show Access log names
        <log-name>
    3:format                    Show Access log format configuration
      4:brief                   Show Access log format names
        <format-name>
    3:statistics                Show Access log statistics
      <logName>
    3:default-logging           Show Access log default policy
> show commands delimited
1;show;Show running system information;sh;0;11
2;access-log;Access log settings;acces;0;11
3;log;Show Access log configuration;l;0;11
4;brief;Show Access log names;b;0;11
p;<log-name>;*;*;0;14
3;format;Show Access log format configuration;f;0;11
4;brief;Show Access log format names;b;0;11
p;<format-name>;*;*;0;14
3;statistics;Show Access log statistics;s;0;11
p;<logName>;*;*;0;14
3;default-logging;Show Access log default policy;d;0;11
```

> show diagnostics

Synopsis

Displays remote diagnostics information, including version number, and whether the Heartbeats feature and the SG appliance monitor are currently enabled.

Syntax

```
> show diagnostics [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

> show diagnostics configuration
Displays diagnostics settings.

> show diagnostics cpu-monitor
Displays the CPU Monitor results.

> show diagnostics service-info
Displays service-info settings.

> show diagnostics snapshot
Displays the snapshot configuration.

Example

```
> show diagnostics snapshot
Snapshot sysinfo
  Target:        /sysinfo
  Status:        Enabled
  Interval:      1440 minutes
  To keep:       30
  To take:       Infinite
  Next snapshot: 2006-03-18 00:00:00 UTC
Snapshot sysinfo_stats
  Target:        /sysinfo-stats
  Status:        Enabled
  Interval:      60 minutes
  To keep:       30
  To take:       Infinite
  Next snapshot: 2006-03-17 20:00:00 UTC
```

> show disk

Synopsis

Displays disk information, including slot number, vendor, product ID, revision and serial number, capacity, and status, about all disks or a specified disk.

Syntax

```
> show disk {disk_number | all}
```

Subcommands

> show disk *disk_number*
Displays information on the specified disk.

> show disk all
Displays information on all disks in the system.

Example

```
> show disk 1
Disk in slot 1
  Vendor: SEAGATE
  Product: ST340014A
  Revision: 8.54
  Disk serial number: 5JVQ76VS
  Capacity: 40020664320 bytes
  Status: present
```

> show exceptions

Synopsis

Displays all exceptions or just built-in or user defined exceptions.

Syntax

```
> show exceptions [built-in_id | user-defined_id]
```

For More Information

- #(config) exceptions on page 172

Example

```
> show exceptions
Built-in:
authentication_failed
authentication_failed_password_expired
authentication_mode_not_supported
authentication_redirect_from_virtual_host
authentication_redirect_off_box
authentication_redirect_to_virtual_host
authentication_success
authorization_failed
bad_credentials
client_failure_limit_exceeded
configuration_error
connect_method_denied
content_filter_denied
content_filter_unavailable
dns_server_failure
dns_unresolved_hostname
dynamic_bypass_reload
gateway_error
icap_communication_error
icap_error
internal_error
invalid_auth_form
invalid_request
invalid_response
license_exceeded
license_expired
method_denied
not_implemented
notify
notify_missing_cookie
policy_denied
policy_redirect
radius_splash_page
redirected_stored_requests_not_supported
refresh
server_request_limit_exceeded
silent_denied
spoof_authentication_error
ssl_client_cert_revoked
ssl_domain_invalid
```

```
ssl_failed
ssl_server_cert_expired
ssl_server_cert_revoked
ssl_server_cert_untrusted_issuer
tcp_error
transformation_error
unsupported_encoding
unsupported_protocol
```

> show im

Synopsis

Displays Instant Messaging settings.

Syntax

```
> show im [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

> show im configuration
Displays IM configuration information.

> show im aol-statistics
Displays statistics of AOL IM usage.

> show im msn-statistics
Displays statistics of MSN IM usage.

> show im yahoo-statistics
Displays statistics of Yahoo! IM usage.

For More Information

- *Volume 3: Web Communication Proxies*.

Example

```
> show im configuration
IM Configuration
aol-admin-buddy:          Blue Coat SG
msn-admin-buddy:          Blue Coat SG
yahoo-admin-buddy:        Blue Coat SG
exceptions:               out-of-band
buddy-spoof-message:      <none>
http-handoff:             enabled
explicit-proxy-vip:       <none>
aol-native-host:          login.oscar.aol.com
aol-http-host:            aimhttp.oscar.aol.com
aol-direct-proxy-host:    ars.oscar.aol.com
msn-native-host:          messenger.hotmail.com
msn-http-host:            gateway.messenger.hotmail.com
yahoo-native-host:        scs.msg.yahoo.com
yahoo-http-host:          shttp.msg.yahoo.com
yahoo-http-chat-host:     http.chat.yahoo.com
yahoo-upload-host:        filetransfer.msg.yahoo.com
yahoo-download-host:      .yahoofs.com
```

> show ip-stats

Synopsis

Displays TCP/IP statistics.

Syntax

```
> show ip-stats [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

> show ip-stats all
Display TCP/IP statistics.

> show ip-stats interface {all | *number***}**
Displays TCP/IP statistics for all interfaces or for the specified number (0 to 7).

> show ip-stats ip
Displays IP statistics.

> show ip-stats memory
Displays TCP/IP memory statistics.

> show ip-stats summary
Displays TCP/IP summary statistics.

> show ip-stats tcp
Displays TCP statistics.

> show ip-stats udp
Displays UDP statistics.

Example

```
> show ip-stats summary
; TCP/IP Statistics
TCP/IP General Statistics
Entries in TCP queue: 12
Maximum entries in TCP queue: 19
Entries in TCP time wait queue: 0
Maximum entries in time wait queue: 173
Number of time wait allocation failures: 0
Entries in UDP queue: 2
```

> show sources

Synopsis

Displays source listings for installable lists, such as the license key, policy files, ICP settings, RIP settings, static route table, and WCCP settings files.

Syntax

```
> show sources [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

> show sources forwarding
Displays forwarding settings.

> show sources icp-settings
Displays ICP settings.

> show sources license-key
Displays license information

> show sources policy {central | local | forward | vpm-cpl | vpm-xml}
Displays the policy file specified.

> show sources rip-settings
Displays RIP settings.

> show sources socks-gateways
Displays the SOCKS gateways settings.

> show sources static-route-table
Displays the static routing table information.

> show sources wccp-settings
Displays WCCP settings.

Example

```
> show sources socks-gateways
# Current SOCKS Gateways Configuration
# No update
# Connection attempts to SOCKS gateways fail: closed
socks_fail closed
# 0 gateways defined, 64 maximum
# SOCKS gateway configuration
# gateway <gateway-alias> <gateway-domain> <SOCKS port>
#    [version=(4|5 [user=<user-name> password=<password>]
#    [request-compression=yes|no])]
# Default fail-over sequence.
# sequence <gateway-alias> <gateway-alias> ...
# The default sequence is empty.
# SOCKS Gateways Configuration Ends
```

> show ssl

Synopsis

Displays SSL settings

Syntax

```
> show ssl {ccl [list_name] | ssl-client [ssl_client]}
```

Subcommands

> show ssl ccl [*list_name*]
Displays currently configured CA certificate lists or configuration for the specified list_name.

> show ssl ssl-client [*ssl_client*]
Displays information about the specified SSL client.

Example

```
> show ssl ssl-client
SSL-Client Name   Keyring Name     Protocol
---------------   ------------     ------------
default           <None>            SSLv2v3TLSv1
```

> show streaming

Synopsis

Displays QuickTime, RealNetworks, or Microsoft Windows Media information, and client and total bandwidth configurations and usage.

Syntax

```
> show streaming [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

> show streaming configuration
Displays global streaming configuration.

> show streaming quicktime {**configuration** | **statistics**}
Displays QuickTime configuration and statistics.

> show streaming real-media {**configuration** | **statistics**}
Displays Real-Media configuration and statistics.

> show streaming windows-media {**configuration** | **statistics**}
Displays Windows-Media configuration and statistics.

> show streaming statistics
Displays client and gateway bandwidth statistics.

For More Information

- *Volume 3: Web Communication Proxies*

Example

```
> show streaming configuration
; Streaming Configuration
max-client-bandwidth:    unlimited
max-gateway-bandwidth:   unlimited
multicast address:       224.2.128.0 - 224.2.255.255
multicast port:          32768 - 65535
multicast TTL:           16
```

> traceroute

Use this command to trace the route from the current host to the specified destination host.

Syntax

```
> traceroute [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

> traceroute *ip_address*
Specifies the IP address of the destination host.

> traceroute *hostname*
Specifies the name of the destination host.

Example

```
SGOS> traceroute 10.25.36.47
Type escape sequence to abort.
Tracing the route to 10.25.36.47
1 10.25.36.47 0 0 0
```

Privileged Mode Commands

Privileged mode provides a robust set of commands that enable you to view, manage, and change SG appliance settings for features such as log files, authentication, caching, DNS, HTTPS, packet capture filters, and security.

Note: The privileged mode subcommand, `configure`, enables you to manage the SG appliance features.

acquire-utc

Synopsis

Use this command to acquire the Universal Time Coordinates (UTC) from a Network Time Protocol (NTP) server. To manage objects, a SG appliance must know the current UTC time. Your SG appliance comes pre-populated with a list of NTP servers available on the Internet, and attempts to connect to them in the order they appear in the NTP server list on the NTP tab. If the SG appliance cannot access any of the listed NTP servers, the UTC time must be set manually. For instructions on how to set the UTC time manually, refer to *Volume 1: Getting Started*.

Syntax

```
# acquire-utc
```

The `acquire-utc` command has no parameters or subcommands.

Example

```
SGOS# acquire-utc
 ok
```

bridge

Synopsis

This command clears bridge data.

Syntax

bridge {*subcommands*]

Subcommands

bridge clear-statistics *bridge_name*
Clears bridge statistics.

bridge clear-fwtable *bridge_name*
Clears bridge forward table.

For More Information

- *Volume 1: Getting Started*

Example

SGOS# **bridge clear-statistics testbridge**
ok

cancel-upload

Synopsis

This command cancels a pending access-log upload. The cancel-upload command allows you to stop repeated upload attempts if the Web server becomes unreachable while an upload is in progress. This command sets log uploading back to idle if the log is waiting to retry the upload. If the log is in the process of uploading, a flag is set to the log. This flag sets the log back to idle if the upload fails.

Syntax

```
# cancel-upload [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

 # cancel-upload all
Cancels upload for all logs.

 # cancel-upload log *log_name*
Cancels upload for a specified log.

For More Information

- *Volume 8: Access Logging*

Example

```
SGOS# cancel-upload all
 ok
```

clear-arp

Synopsis

The clear-arp command clears the Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) table. ARP tables are used to correlate an IP address to a physical machine address recognized only in a local area network. ARP provides the protocol rules for providing address conversion between a physical machine address (also known as a Media Access Control or MAC address) and its corresponding IP address, and vice versa.

Syntax

```
# clear-arp
```

The `clear-arp` command has no parameters or subcommands.

Example

```
SGOS# clear-arp
 ok
```

clear-cache

Synopsis

This command clears the byte, dns, or object cache. This can be done at any time. However, keep in mind that if any cache is cleared, performance slows down until the cache is repopulated.

Note: `#clear-cache` with no arguments can also be used to clear the object cache.

Syntax

```
# clear-cache [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

 # clear-cache byte-cache
Clears the byte cache.

 # clear-cache dns-cache
Clears the DNS cache.

 # clear-cache object-cache
Sets all objects in the cache to expired.

Example

```
SGOS# clear-cache byte-cache
 ok
```

clear-statistics

Synopsis

This command clears the bandwidth-management, persistent, and Windows Media, Real Media, and QuickTime streaming statistics collected by the SG appliance. To view streaming statistics from the CLI, use either the `show streaming {quicktime | real-media | windows-media} statistics` or the `show bandwidth-management statistics [bandwidth_class]` commands. To view streaming statistics from the Management Console, go to either **Statistics > Streaming History > Windows Media/Real Media/Quicktime**, or to **Statistics > Bandwidth Mgmt**.

Syntax

```
# clear-statistics [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

 # clear-statistics bandwidth-management [class *class_name*]
Clears bandwidth-management statistics, either for all classes at one time or for the bandwidth-management class specified

 # clear-statistics efficiency
Clears efficiency statistics.

 # clear-statistics epmapper
Clears Endpoint Mapper statistics.

 # clear-statistics persistent [*prefix*]
Clears statistics that persist after a reboot. You can clear all persistent statistics, or, since statistics are kept in a naming convention of `group:stat`, you can limit the statistics cleared to a specific group. Common prefixes include HTTP, SSL, and SOCKS.

 # clear-statistics quicktime
Clears QuickTime statistics.

 # clear-statistics real-media
Clears Real Media statistics.

 # clear-statistics windows-media
Clears Windows Media statistics.

Example

```
SGOS# clear-statistics windows-media
 ok
```

configure

Synopsis

The privileged mode subcommand `configure`, enables you to manage the SG appliance features.

Syntax

`# config t`

Where `conf` refers to `configure` and t refers to `terminal`.

This changes the prompt to `#(config)`. At this point you are in `configure terminal` mode and can make permanent changes to the device.

`# config network` *url*

This command downloads a previously loaded web-accessible script, such as a configuration file, and implements the changes in the script onto the system.

For More Information

- Chapter 3: "Privileged Mode Configure Commands" on page 87

Example

```
# conf n http://1.1.1.1/fconfigure.txt
```

disable

Synopsis

The `disable` command returns you to Standard mode from Privileged mode.

Syntax

```
# disable
```

The `disable` command has no parameters or subcommands.

For More Information

- **> enable** on page 16
- **# exit** on page 50

Example

```
SGOS# disable
SGOS>
```

disk

Synopsis

Use the `disk` command to take a disk offline or to re-initialize a disk.

On a multi-disk SG appliance, after issuing the `disk reinitialize disk_number` command, complete the reinitialization by setting it to empty and copying pre-boot programs, boot programs and starter programs, and system images from the master disk to the re-initialized disk. The master disk is the leftmost valid disk. *Valid* indicates that the disk is online, has been properly initialized, and is not marked as invalid or unusable.

Note: If the current master disk is taken offline, reinitialized or declared invalid or unusable, the leftmost valid disk that has not been reinitialized since restart becomes the master disk. Thus as disks are reinitialized in sequence, a point is reached where no disk can be chosen as the master. At this point, the current master disk is the last disk. If this disk is taken offline, reinitialized, or declared invalid or unusable, the SG appliance is restarted.

Reinitialization is done without rebooting the SG appliance. The SG appliance operations, in turn, are not affected, although during the time the disk is being reinitialized, that disk is not available for caching. Note that only the master disk reinitialization might restart the SG appliance.

Syntax

```
# disk {subcommands]
```

Subcommands

`# disk disk offline disk_number`
Takes the disk specified by *disk_number* off line.

`# disk disk reinitialize disk_number`
Reinitializes the disk specified by *disk_number*.

Example

```
SGOS# disk offline 3
 ok
SGOS# disk reinitialize 3
 ok
```

display

See `> display` on page 15 for more information.

exit

Synopsis

Exits from Configuration mode to Privileged mode, from Privileged mode to Standard mode. From Standard mode, the `exit` command closes the CLI session.

Syntax

```
# exit
```

The `exit` command has no parameters or subcommands.

Example

```
SGOS# exit
```

help

See **Accessing Quick Command Line Help** on page 11 for information about this command.

hide-advanced

Synopsis

Use this command to disable advanced commands.

Note: You can also use the configure command `SGOS#(config) hide-advanced {all | expand}` to hide commands.

Syntax

`# hide-advanced [subcommands]`

Subcommands

`# hide-advanced all`
Hides all advanced commands.

`# hide-advanced expand`
Disables expanded commands.

For More Information

❒ # reveal-advanced on page 71

Example

```
SGOS# hide-advanced expand
  ok
SGOS# hide-advanced all
  ok
```

inline

Synopsis

Installs lists based on your terminal input.

Discussion

The easiest way to create installable lists, such as forwarding hosts, PAC files, and policy files, among others, is to take an existing file and modify it, or to create the text file on your local system, upload the file to a Web server, and download the file to the SG appliance. As an alternative, you can enter the list directly into the SG appliance through the inline command, either by typing the list line by line or by pasting the contents of the file.

If you choose to create a text file to contain the configuration commands and settings, be sure to assign the file the extension `.txt`. Use a text editor to create this file, noting the following SG appliance configuration file rules:

- Only one command (and any associated parameters) permitted, per line
- Comments must begin with a semicolon (;)
- Comments can begin in any column, however, all characters from the beginning of the comment to the end of the line are considered part of the comment and, therefore, are ignored

Tips:

- When entering input for the inline command, you can correct mistakes on the current line using the backspace key. If you catch a mistake in a line that has already been terminated with the Enter key, you can abort the inline command by typing <Ctrl-c>. If the mistake is caught after you terminate input to the inline command, you must re-enter the entire content.
- The end-of-input marker is an arbitrary string chosen by the you to mark the end of input for the current inline command. The string can be composed of standard characters and numbers, but cannot contain any spaces, punctuation marks, or other symbols.

  Choose a unique end-of-input string that does not match any string of characters in the configuration information. One recommended end-of-input string is `'''` (three single quotes).

Syntax

inline {*subcommands*]

Subcommands

inline accelerated-pac ***eof_marker***
Updates the accelerated pac file with the settings you include between the beginning *eof_marker* and the ending *eof_marker*.

inline authentication-form ***form_name*** *eof_marker*
Install an authentication form from console input

inline authentication-forms *eof_marker*
Install all authentication form from console input

inline banner *eof_marker*
Updates the login banner for the telnet and SSH consoles with the settings you include between the beginning *eof_marker* and the ending *eof_marker*.

 # inline exceptions *eof_marker*
Install exceptions with the settings you include between the beginning *eof_marker* and the ending *eof_marker*.

 # inline forwarding *eof_marker*
Updates the forwarding configuration with the settings you include between the beginning *eof_marker* and the ending *eof_marker*.

 # inline icp-settings *eof_marker*
Updates the current ICP settings with the settings you include between the beginning *eof_marker* and the ending *eof_marker*.

 # inline license-key *eof_marker*
Updates the current license key settings with the settings you include between the beginning *eof_marker* and the ending *eof_marker*.

 # inline policy *eof_marker*
Updates the current policy settings—central, local, forward, vpm-cpl, and vpm-xml—with the settings you include between the beginning eof_marker and the ending eof_marker.

 # inline rip-settings *eof_marker*
Updates the current RIP settings with the settings you include between the beginning *eof_marker* and the ending *eof_marker*.

 # inline socks-gateways *eof_marker*
Updates the current SOCKS gateway settings with the settings you include between the beginning *eof_marker* and the ending *eof_marker*.

 # inline static-route-table *eof_marker*
Updates the current static route table settings with the settings you include between the beginning *eof_marker* and the ending *eof_marker*.

 # inline wccp-settings *eof_marker*
Updates the current WCCP settings with the settings you include between the beginning *eof_marker* and the ending *eof_marker*.

For More Information

- man pages for the specific component (wccp, acc pac, and the like)
- **# load** on page 57

Example

```
SGOS# inline wccp eof
wccp enable eof
'''
```

kill

Synopsis

Terminates a CLI session.

Syntax

```
# kill session_number
```

where *session_number* is a valid CLI session number.

Example

```
> show sessions
Sessions:
#   state type             start                          elapsed
   01 IDLE
   02 PRIVL ssh        08 Aug 2006 21:27:51 UTC  23:08:04
   03* NORML ssh     10 Aug 2006 20:35:40 UTC 00:00:15
   ...
> enable
Enable Password:
# kill 3
 ok
```

licensing

Synopsis

Use these commands to request or update licenses.

Syntax

```
# licensing [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

 # licensing request-key [force] *user_id password*
Requests the license key from Blue Coat using the WebPower user ID and password.

 # licensing update-key [force]
Updates the license key from Blue Coat now.

 # licensing register-hardware [force] *user_ID password*
Register hardware with Bluecoat.

 # licensing mark-registered
Mark the hardware registered manually.

 # licensing disable-trial
Disable trial period.

 # licensing enable-trial
Enable trial period.

For More Information

- *Volume 1: Getting Started*

Example

```
SGOS# licensing request-key
User ID: admin
Password: *****
...
 ok
```

where ". . ." represents license download-in-progress information.

load

Synopsis

Downloads installable lists or system upgrade images. These installable lists or settings also can be updated using the `inline` command.

Syntax

 # load accelerated-pac
Downloads the current accelerated pac file settings.

 # load authentication-form *form_name*
Downloads the new authentication form.

 # load authentication-forms
Downloads the new authentication forms.

 # load exceptions
Downloads new exceptions.

 # load forwarding
Downloads the current forwarding settings.

 # load icp-settings
Downloads the current ICP settings.

 # load license-key
Downloads the new license key.

 # load policy {central | forward | local | vpm-cpl | vpm-xml}
Downloads the policy file specified

 # load rip-settings
Downloads the current RIP settings.

 # load socks-gateways
Downloads the current SOCKS gateways settings.

 # load sg-client-software
Loads the SG Client software to the Client Manager. To use this command, you must have previously defined an upload location using **#(config) sg-client on page 310**. Messages display as the software loads.

 # load static-route-table
Downloads the current static route table settings.

 # load upgrade [ignore-warnings]
Downloads the latest system image. The ignore-warnings option allows you to force an upgrade even if you receive policy deprecation warnings. Note that using the load upgrade ignore-warnings command to force an upgrade while the system emits deprecation warnings results in a policy load failure; all traffic is allowed or denied according to default policy.

 # load wccp-settings
Downloads the current WCCP settings.

 # load timezone-database
Downloads a new time zone database.

For More Information

- **# inline on page 53**

Example

```
> show download-paths
Policy
  Local:
  Forward:
   VPM-CPL:
  VPM-XML:
  Central:  https://download.bluecoat.com/release/SG3/files/CentralPolicy.txt
    Update when changed: no
    Notify when changed: no
    Polling interval:    1 day
  Accelerated PAC:
  ICP settings:
  RIP settings:
  Static route table:
  Upgrade image:
    bcserver1.bluecoat.com/builds/ca_make.26649/wdir/8xx.CHK_dbg
  WCCP settings:
  Forwarding settings:
  SOCKS gateway settings:
  License key:
  Exceptions:
  Authentication forms:
>en
  Enable Password
# load upgrade
  Downloading from
"bcserver1.bluecoat.com/builds/ca_make.26649/wdir/8xx.CHK_dbg"
  Downloading new system software (block 2611)
  The new system software has been successfully downloaded.
  Use "restart upgrade" to install the new system software.
```

pcap

Synopsis

The PCAP utility enables you to capture packets of Ethernet frames entering or leaving a SG appliance. Packet capturing allows filtering on various attributes of the frame to limit the amount of data collected. The collected data can then be transferred to the desktop for analysis.

Note: Before using the PCAP utility, consider that packet capturing doubles the amount of processor usage performed in TCP/IP.

To view the captured packets, you must have a tool that can read Packet Sniffer Pro 1.1 files.

Syntax

```
# pcap [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

 # pcap filter on page 60
Specifies filters to use for PCAP.

 # pcap info
Displays the current packet capture information.

 # pcap start on page 62
Starts the capture.

 # pcap stop
Stops the capture.

 # pcap transfer *full_url/filename username password*
Transfers captured data to an FTP site.

For More Information

- *Volume 9: Managing the Blue Coat SG Appliance.*

Example 1

Capture transactions among a SG appliance (10.1.1.1), a server (10.2.2.2), and a client (10.1.1.2).

```
SGOS# pcap filter expr "host 10.1.1.1 || host 10.2.2.2 || host 10.1.1.2"
```

Example 2

This example transfers captured packets to the FTP site 10.25.36.47. Note that the username and password are provided.

```
SGOS# pcap transfer ftp://10.25.36.47/path/filename.cap username password
```

If the folders in the path do not exist, they are not created. An error message is generated.

pcap filter

Synopsis

After a filter is set, it remains in effect until it is redefined; the filtering properties are persistent across reboots. However, PCAP stops when a system is rebooted.

Syntax

```
# pcap filter [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

 # pcap filter [direction {in | out | both}]
Specifies capture in the specified direction. If `both` is selected, both incoming and outgoing packets are captured. The default setting is `both`.

 # pcap filter [interface *adapter_number:interface_number* | **all]**
Specifies capture on the specified interface or on all interfaces. For example, 0:1. The interface number must be between 0 and 16. The default setting is `all`.

 # pcap filter [expr *filter_expression*]
Specifies capture only when the filter expression matches.

 # pcap filter
No filtering specified (captures all packets in both directions---on all interfaces).

For More Information

- *Volume 9: Managing the Blue Coat SG Appliance*.

Example

This example configures packet capturing in both directions, on all interfaces, to or from port 3035:

```
# pcap filter direction both interface all expr “port 3035”
 ok
```

To verify the settings before starting PCAP, enter `pcap info`:

```
SGOS# pcap info
Current state:                    Stopped
Filtering:                             On
Filter:         direction both interface all expr "port 3035"
Packet capture information:
Packets captured:                       0
Bytes captured:                         0
Packets written:                        0
Bytes written:                          0
Coreimage ram used:                     0B
Packets filtered through:               0
```

To start PCAP, enter `pcap start`. Then run `pcap info` to view the results of the packet capture.

```
SGOS# pcap start
 ok
SGOS# pcap info
Current state:                     Capturing
Filtering:                              On
Filter:         direction both interface all expr "port 3035"
Packet capture information:
first count 4294967295 capsize 100000000 trunc 4294967295 coreimage 0
Packets captured:                    2842
Bytes captured:                    237403
Packets written:                     2836
Bytes written:                     316456
Coreimage ram used:                     0B
Packets filtered through:            8147
```

After PCAP is stopped (using the `pcap stop` command), enter `pcap info` to view the results of your PCAP session. You should see results similar to the following:

```
SGOS# pcap info
Current state:                     Stopped
Filtering:                              On
Filter:         direction both interface all expr "port 3035"
Packet capture information:
Packets captured:                        5101
Bytes captured:                          444634
Packets written:                         5101
Bytes written:                           587590
Coreimage ram used:                      0B
Packets filtered through:                10808
```

pcap start

Synopsis

Start packet capture. The `pcap start` options are not persistent across reboots. You must reconfigure them if you reboot the system.

Syntax

```
# pcap start [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

`[buffering-method]`

Syntax: `[first | last] {[count <N>]|[capsize <NKB>]}`

The buffering method specifies how captured packets are buffered in memory. The amount of packets buffered cannot exceed a hard limit of 100MB.

`[count]` and `[capsize]`

The `count` option specifies that the buffer limit is controlled by the number of packets stored in the buffer. The value of count must be between 1 and 1000000.

The `capsize` option specifies that the buffer limit is controlled by the total number of bytes of packets stored in the buffer. The `capsize` value must be between 1 and 102400.

Note: The `capsize n` option is an approximate command; it captures an approximate number of packets. The actual size of the file written to disk is a little larger than the `capsize` value because of extra packet information such as time-stamps. If no parameters are specified, the default is to capture until the stop subcommand is issued or the maximum limit reached.

`[first]` and `[last]`

The `first` and `last` options affect the buffering behavior when the buffer is full. When `first` is specified, PCAP stops when the buffer limit is exceeded. When `last` is specified, PCAP continues capturing even after the buffer limit has been exceeded. The oldest captured packets are removed from buffer to make space for the newly captured packets: In this way, PCAP captures the last N (or N K bytes of) packets. The saved packets in memory are written to disk when the capture is terminated.

The packet capture file size is limited to 1% of total RAM, which might be reached before n packets have been captured.

Note: The `first` option is a specific command; it captures an exact number of packets. If no parameters are specified, the default is to capture until the stop subcommand is issued or the maximum limit reached.

`[coreimage n]`
Specifies kilobytes of packets kept in a core image. The `coreimage` size must be between 0 and 102400. By default, no packets are kept in the core image.

`[trunc n]`
The `trunc n` parameter collects, at most, *n* bytes of packets from each frame when writing to disk. The range is 1 to 65535.

For More Information

- *Volume 9: Managing the Blue Coat SG Appliance*.

Example 1

The following command captures the first 2000 packets that match the filtering expression:

```
# pcap start first count 2000
```

Note that the `first` option configures PCAP to stop capturing after the buffer limit of 2000 packets has been reached. If the `last` option had been specified, PCAP keeps capturing packets even after the buffer limit had been exceeded, until halted by the `pcap stop` command.

Example 2

The following command stops the capturing of packets after approximately three kilobytes of packets have been collected.

```
SGOS# pcap start first capsize 3
```

ping

Synopsis

Use this command to verify that a particular IP address exists and can accept requests. Ping output also tells you the minimum, maximum, and average time it took for the ping test data to reach the other computer and return to the origin.

Syntax

```
# ping {ip_address | hostname}
```

where *ip_address* is the IP address and *hostname* is the hostname of the remote computer.

Example

```
SGOS# ping 10.25.36.47
Type escape sequence to abort.
Sending 5, 64-byte ICMP Echos to 10.25.36.47, timeout is 2 seconds:
!!!!!
Success rate is 100 percent (5/5), round-trip min/avg/max = 0/0/0 ms
Number of duplicate packets received = 0
```

policy

Synopsis

Use this command to configure policy commands.

Note: Configuring the policy command to trace all transactions by default can significantly degrade performance and should only be used in situations where a problem is being diagnosed.

Syntax

```
# policy trace {all | none}
```

Use `all` to trace all transactions by default, and use `none` to specify no tracing except as specified in policy files.

Example

```
policy trace all
  ok
All requests will be traced by default;
Warning: this can significantly degrade performance.
Use 'policy trace none' to restore normal operation
SGOS# policy trace none
  ok
```

purge-dns-cache

Synopsis

This command clears the DNS cache. You can purge the DNS cache at any time. You might need to do so if you have experienced a problem with your DNS server, or if you have changed your DNS configuration.

Syntax

```
# purge-dns-cache
```

The `purge-dns-cache` command has no parameters or subcommands.

Example

```
SGOS# purge-dns-cache
 ok
```

register-with-director

Synopsis

The `register-with-director` command is a setup command that automatically registers the SG appliance with a Blue Coat Director, thus enabling that Director to establish a secure administrative session with the appliance. During the registration process, Director can "lock out" all other administrative access to the appliance so that all configuration changes are controlled and initiated by Director.

If your appliance does not have an appliance certificate, you must specify the registration password that is configured on Director.

Syntax

```
# register-with-director dir_ip_address [appliance_name dir_serial_number]
```

Example

```
SGOS# register-with-director 192.168.0.x
Registration Successful
```

restart

Synopsis

Restarts the system. The restart options determine whether the SG appliance should simply reboot the SG appliance (regular), or should reboot using the new image previously downloaded using the `load upgrade` command (upgrade).

Syntax

```
# restart [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

 # restart abrupt

Reboots the system abruptly, according to the version of the SG appliance that is currently installed. Restart abrupt saves a core image. Note that the restart can take several minutes using this option.

 # restart regular

Reboots the version of the SG appliance that is currently installed

 # restart upgrade

Reboots the entire system image and allows you to select the version you want to boot, not limited to the new version on the system.

For More Information

❒ **# load** on page 57

Example

```
SGOS# restart upgrade
  ok
SGOS# Read from remote host 10.9.17.159: Connection reset by peer
Connection to 10.9.17.159 closed.
```

restore-sgos4-config

Restores the SG appliance to settings last used with SGOS 4.x. The SG appliance retains the network settings. Note that a reboot is required to complete this command.

Syntax

```
# restore-sgos4-config
```

Example

```
SGOS# restore-sgos4-config
Restoring SGOS 4.x configuration requires a restart to take effect.
The current configuration will be lost and the system will be restarted.
Continue with restoring? (y/n)[n]: y
Restoring configuration ...
```

Or if there is no SGOS 4.x configuration found:

```
SGOS# restore-sgos4-config
%% No SGOS 4.x configuration is available on this system.
```

For More Information

- # restore-defaults on page 70

restore-defaults

Synopsis

Restores the SG appliance to the default configuration. When you restore system defaults, the SG appliance's IP address, default gateway, and the DNS server addresses are cleared. In addition, any lists (for example, forwarding or bypass) are cleared. After restoring system defaults, you need to restore the SG appliance's basic network settings, as described in *Volume 9: Managing the Blue Coat SG Appliance*, and reset any customizations.

Syntax

```
# restore-defaults [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

 # restore-defaults factory-defaults

Reinitializes the SG appliance to the original settings it had when it was shipped from the factory

 # restore-defaults force

Restores the system defaults without confirmation.

If you don't use the `force` command, you are prompted to enter `yes` or `no` before the restoration can proceed.

 # restore-defaults keep-console [force]

Restores defaults except settings required for console access. Using the `keep-console` option retains the settings for all consoles (Telnet-, SSH-, HTTP-, and HTTPS-consoles), whether they are enable, disabled, or deleted.

If you use the force command, you are not prompted to enter yes or no before restoration can proceed.

For More Information

- *Volume 9: Managing the Blue Coat SG Appliance*

Example

```
SGOS# restore-defaults
Restoring defaults requires a restart to take effect.
The current configuration will be lost and the system will be restarted.
Continue with restoring? (y/n)[n]: n
Existing configuration preserved.
```

reveal-advanced

Synopsis

The `reveal-advanced` command allows you to enable all or a subset of the advanced commands available to you when using the CLI. You can also use SGOS#(config) `hide-advanced {all | expand}` to reveal hidden commands.

Syntax

```
# reveal-advanced [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

 # reveal-advanced all
Reveals all advanced commands.

 # reveal-advanced expand
Enables expanded commands.

For More Information

- **# hide-advanced** on page 52

Example

```
SGOS# reveal-advanced all
 ok
```

show

The `# show` command displays all the show commands available in the standard mode plus the show commands available only in privileged mode and configuration mode. Only `show` commands available in privileged mode are discussed here. For `show` commands also available in the standard mode, see **`> show`** on page 20.

Synopsis

Use this command to display system information.

Syntax

`# **show** [*subcommands*]`

Subcommands

`# **show archive-configuration**`
Displays archive configuration settings.

`# **show adn**`
Displays ADN configuration.

`# show attack-detection` **on page 75**
Displays client attack-detection settings.

`# show configuration` **on page 76**
Displays system configuration.

`# **show connection-forwarding**`
Displays TCP connection forwarding status and peer IP address list.

`# show content` **on page 77**
Displays content-management commands.

`# **show content-filter {bluecoat | i-filter | intersafe | iwf | local | optenet | proventia | smartfilter | surfcontrol | status | websense | webwasher}**`
Shows settings for Blue Coat Web Filter or the various third-party content-filtering vendors. You can get information on current content-filtering status by using the `# show content-filter status` command.

`# show proxy-services` on page 78
Displays information on static and dynamic bypass and proxy-service behavior.

`# **show realms**`
Displays the status of each realm.

`# show security` **on page 79**
Displays security settings.

`# show ssh` on page 80
Displays SSH settings.

`**# show sg-client**`
Displays SG Client settings.

`# show ssl` on page 81
Also available in standard mode, the `# show ssl` command offers more options in privileged mode.

`# **show system-resource-metrics**`
Displays system resource statistics.

Examples

```
# show archive-configuration
Archive configuration
  Protocol: FTP
  Host:
  Path:
  Filename:
  Username:
  Password: ************
# show content-filter status
Provider:                       Blue Coat
Status:                         Database unavailable
Download URL:
https://list.bluecoat.com/bcwf/activity/download/bcwf.db
Download Username:
Automatic download:             Enabled
Download time of day (UTC):     0
Download on:                    sun, mon, tue, wed, thu, fri, sat
Category review message:        Disabled
Dynamic Categorization Service: Enabled
Dynamic Categorization Mode:    Real-time
Download log:
  Blue Coat download at: Sat, 18 Mar 2006 01:57:24 UTC
  Downloading from https://list.bluecoat.com/bcwf/activity/download/bcwf.db
  Requesting differential update
  Differential update applied successfully
  Download size:      84103448
  Database date:      Thu, 09 Feb 2006 08:11:51 UTC
  Database expires:   Sat, 11 Mar 2006 08:11:51 UTC
  Database version:   2005040
# show realms
Local realm:
  No local realm is defined.
RADIUS realm:
  Realm name:                   RADIUS1
  Display name:                 RADIUS1
  Case sensitivity:             enabled
  Primary server host:          10.9.59.210
  Primary server port:          1812
  Primary server secret:        ************
  Alternate server host:
  Alternate server port:        1812
  Alternate server secret:      ************
  Server retry count:           5
  Cache duration:               900
  Virtual URL:
  Server timeout:               5
  Spoof authentication:         none
  One time passwords:           no
LDAP realm(s):
  No LDAP realms are defined.
```

show adn

Synopsis

Displays ADN settings and statistics.

Syntax

```
# show adn [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

 # show adn byte-cache
Displays ADN byte-cache settings.

 # show adn routing [advertise-internet-gateway | server-subnets]
Displays ADN routing settings.

 # show adn tunnel
Displays ADN tunnel configuration.

For More Information

- *Volume 5: Advanced Networking*

Example

```
# show adn
Application Delivery Network Configuration:
  ADN:                        disabled
  Manager port:               3034
  Tunnel port:                  3035
  Primary manager:      none
  Backup manager:        none
  External VIP:                      none
  Byte-cache Configuration:
    Max number of peers: 10347
    Max peer memory:          30
Tunnel Configuration:
  proxy-processing http:     disabled
  TCP window size:             65536
  reflect-client-ip :                    use-local-ip
Routing Configuration:
  Internet Gateway:               disabled
  Exempt Server subnet:      10.0.0.0/8
  Exempt Server subnet:      172.16.0.0/16
  Exempt Server subnet:         192.168.0.0/16
```

show attack-detection

Synopsis

Displays client attack-detection settings and client and server statistics.

Syntax

```
# show attack-detection [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

client [blocked | connections | statistics]
Displays client attack-detection settings.

client configuration
Displays attack-detection configuration.

server [statistics]
Displays server statistics

For More Information

- *Volume 5: Advanced Networking*

show configuration

Synopsis

Displays the current configuration, as different from the default configuration.

Syntax

```
# show configuration [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

 # show configuration
Displays all settings

 # show configuration brief
Displays the configuration without inline expansion.

 # show configuration expanded
Displays the configuration with inline expansion.

 # show configuration noprompts
Displays the configuration without `--More--` prompts.

 # show configuration post-setup
Displays the configuration made after console setup.

Example

Assuming non-default settings of:

- policy = <Proxy> DENY
- IP address of 10.167.42.38

```
# show configuration brief
interface 0:0 ;mode
ip-address 10.167.42.38
exit
# show configuration expanded
interface 0:0 ;mode
ip-address 10.167.42.38
exit
!
inline policy local "end-326998078-inline"
<Proxy>
DENY
end-326998078-inline
```

show content

Synopsis

Displays content-management commands.

Syntax

```
# show content [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

 # show content outstanding-requests
Displays the complete list of outstanding asynchronous content revalidation and distribute requests;

 # show content priority [**regex** *regex* | **url** *url*]
displays the deletion priority value assigned to the *regex* or *url*, respectively

 # show content url *url*
Displays statistics of the specified URL.

For More Information

- *Volume 7: Managing Content*

show proxy-services

Synopsis

Information about proxy services

Syntax

show proxy-services [*subcommands*]

Subcommands

show proxy-services
Displays all proxy services configured on the system.

show proxy-services dynamic-bypass
Displays dynamic-bypass information.

show proxy-services services bypass
Display services containing a bypass action.

show proxy-services services intercept
Display services containing an intercept action.

show proxy-services services *name*
Display services with name substring match.

show proxy-services services *proxy*
Display services using a specific proxy.

show proxy-services static-bypass
Displays static-bypass information.

For More Information

- *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*

show security

Synopsis

Displays information about security parameters.

Syntax

```
# show security [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

 # show security
Displays all security settings on the system.

 # show security authentication-errors
Displays all authentication errors.

 # show security authentication-forms
Displays authentication forms configured on the system.

 # show security local-user-list
Displays the local user list configured on the system.

 # show security local-user-list-group
Displays the groups in local user list.

 # show security local-user-list-user
User in local user list

For More Information

- *Volume 4: Securing the Blue Coat SG Appliance*

Example

```
# show security
Account:
  Username:         "admin"
  Hashed Password: $1$it$24YXwuAGbmvQl7zhaeG5u.
  Hashed Enable Password: $1$U1JZbCl1$itmTNhAwhymF2BNwBnum1/
  Hashed Front Panel PIN: "$1$50KI$KR0RtYxQl02Z26cLy.Pq5."
  Management console display realm name: ""
  Management console auto-logout timeout: 900 seconds
Access control is disabled
Access control list (source, mask):
Flush credentials on policy update is enabled
Default authenticate.mode: auto
Transparent proxy authentication:
  Method: cookie
  Cookie type: session
  Cookie virtual-url: "www.cfauth.com/"
  IP time-to-live: 15
  Verify IP: yes
  Allow redirects: no
.
.
.
```

show ssh

Synopsis

Displays the SSH service details.

Syntax

```
# show ssh [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

```
# show ssh client-key [username]
```
Displays the client key fingerprint for the specified username.

Note: If you upgraded from an older version of the SG appliance, you might not need to enter a username.

```
# show ssh director-client-key [key_id]
```
Displays all client key fingerprints or the client key fingerprint of the specified key ID.

```
# show ssh host-public-key [sshv1 | sshv2]
```
Displays the sshv1 or sshv2 host public key. Both keys are displayed if you do not specify a version.

```
# show ssh user-list
```
Displays a list of users with imported RSA client keys.

```
# show ssh versions-enabled
```
Displays which SSH version or versions are enabled.

For More Information

- *Volume 1: Getting Started*
- *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*

Example

```
# show ssh versions-enabled
SSHv2 is enabled.
```

show ssl

Synopsis

Displays SSL settings.

Syntax

```
# show ssl [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

 # show ssl ca-certificate *name*
Displays the CA certificate configuration

 # show ssl ccl [*list_name*]
Displays currently configured CA certificate lists or configuration for the specified list_name. This option can also be viewed from standard mode.

 # show ssl certificate *keyring_id*
Displays the certificate configuration for the specified keyring.

 # show ssl crl *crl_id*
Displays the SSL certificate Revocation List (CRL) of the specified ID.

 # show ssl external-certificate *name*
Displays external certificate configuration of the specified name.

 # show ssl intercept
Displays the SSL intercept configuration.

 # show ssl keypair {des | des3 | unencrypted} *keyring_id*
Displays the keypair. If you want to view the keypair in an encrypted format, you can optionally specify `des` or `des3` before the keyringID. If you specify either `des` or `des3`, you are prompted for the challenge entered when the keyring was created.

 # show ssl keyring [*keyring_id*]
Displays all keyrings or the keyring of the specified ID.

 # show ssl secure-signing-request *keyring_id*
Displays signed certificate signing request for the specified keyring.

 # show ssl signing-request *keyring_id*
Displays the certificate signing request configuration for the specified keyring.

 # show ssl ssl-client [*ssl_client*]
Displays information about all SSL clients or the specified SSL client. This option can also be viewed from standard mode.

 # show ssl ssl-nego-timeout
Displays the SSL negotiation timeout configuration.

 # show ssl summary {ca-certificate | crl | external-certificate}
Displays the SSL summary information for CA certificates, CRLs, or external certificates.

For More Information

- *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*

Example

```
# show ssl keyring
KeyringID: configuration-passwords-key
  Is private key showable? yes
  Have CSR? no
  Have certificate? no
KeyringID: default
  Is private key showable? yes
  Have CSR? no
  Have certificate? yes
  Is certificate date range valid? yes
  CA: Blue Coat SG200 Series
  Expiration Date: Mar 02 22:25:32 2016 GMT
  Fingerprint: B2:DE:C4:98:58:18:3C:E3:B3:4A:1C:FC:AB:B5:A4:74
```

temporary-route

This command is used to manage temporary route entries. After a reboot these routes are lost.

Syntax

```
# temporary-route [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

 # temporary-route add *destination_address netmask gateway_address*
Adds a temporary route entry.

 # temporary-route delete *destination_address*
Deletes a temporary route entry.

test

This command is used to test subsystems. A `test http get` command to a particular origin server or URL, for example, can verify Layer 3 connectivity and also verify upper layer functionality.

Syntax

test http [*subcommands*]

Subcommands

test http get *url*
Does a test Get of an HTTP object specified by *url*.

test http loopback
Does a loopback test.

Example

```
SGOS# test http loopback
Type escape sequence to abort.
Executing HTTP loopback test
Measured throughput rate is 16688.96 Kbytes/sec
HTTP loopback test passed
SGOS# test http get http://www.google.com
Type escape sequence to abort.
Executing HTTP get test
* HTTP request header sent:
GET http://www.google.com/ HTTP/1.0
Host: www.google.com
User-Agent: HTTP_TEST_CLIENT
* HTTP response header recv'd:
HTTP/1.1 200 OK
Connection: close
Date: Tue, 15 Jul 2003 22:42:12 GMT
Cache-control: private
Content-Type: text/html
Server: GWS/2.1
Content-length: 2691
Set-Cookie:
PREF=ID=500ccde1707c20ac:TM=1058308932:LM=1058308932:S=du3WuiW7FC_lJ
Rgn; expires=Sun, 17-Jan-2038 19:14:07 GMT; path=/; domain=.google.com
Measured throughput rate is 66.72 Kbytes/sec
HTTP get test passed
```

traceroute

Use this command to trace the route to a destination. The `traceroute` command can be helpful in determining where a problem might lie between two points in a network. Use `traceroute` to trace the network path from a SG appliance back to a client or to a specific origin Web server.

Note that you can also use the trace route command from your client station (if supported) to trace the network path between the client, a SG appliance, and a Web server. Microsoft operating systems generally support the trace route command from a DOS prompt. The syntax from a Microsoft-based client is: `tracert` [*ip* | *hostname*].

Syntax

```
# traceroute [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

 # traceroute *IP_address*
Indicates the IP address of the client or origin server.

 # traceroute *hostname*
Indicates the hostname of the origin server.

Example

```
SGOS# traceroute 10.25.36.47
Type escape sequence to abort.
Executing HTTP get test
HTTP response code: HTTP/1.0 503 Service Unavailable
Throughput rate is non-deterministic
HTTP get test passed
10.25.36.47# traceroute 10.25.36.47

Type escape sequence to abort.
Tracing the route to 10.25.36.47
1 10.25.36.47 212 0 0 0
```

upload

Uploads the current access log or running configuration.

Syntax

```
# upload {subcommands}
```

Subcommands

 # upload access-log all
Uploads all access logs to a configured host.

 # upload access-log log *log_name*
Uploads a specified access log to a configured host.

 # upload configuration
Uploads running configuration to a configured host.

Example

```
SGOS# upload configuration
 ok
```

Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

Configure Commands

The `configure` command allows you to configure the Blue Coat SG appliance settings from your current terminal session (`configure terminal`), or by loading a text file of configuration settings from the network (`configure network`).

Syntax

```
configure {terminal | network url}
configure_command
configure_command
.
.
.
```

where *`configure_command`* is any of the configuration commands in this document. Type a question mark after each of these commands for a list of subcommands or options with definitions.

#(config) accelerated-pac

Synopsis

Set the path to download PAC files.

Discussion

Normally, a Web server serves the Proxy Auto-Configuration (PAC) file to client browsers. This feature allows you to load a PAC file onto the SG appliance for high performance PAC file serving right from the device. There are two ways to create an accelerated PAC file:

- customize the default PAC file and save it as a new file
- Create a new custom PAC file.

In either case, it is important that the client instructions for configuring SG appliance settings contain the URL of the Accelerated-PAC file. Clients load PAC files from:

```
https://SG_IP_Address:8082/accelerated_pac_base.pac.
```

Syntax

`#(config)` **`accelerated-pac no path`**
Clears the network path to download PAC file.

`#(config)` **`accelerated-pac path`** *`url`*
Specifies the location to which the PAC file should be downloaded.

For More Information

- **`# inline`** on page 53
- **`# load`** on page 57
- *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*

Example

```
#(config) accelerated-pac path url
#(config) load accelerated-pac
```

#(config) access-log

Synopsis

The SG appliance can maintain an access log for each HTTP request made. The access log can be stored in one of three formats, which can be read by a variety of reporting utilities.

Syntax

```
#(config) access-log
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config access-log)
```

Subcommands

`#(config access-log)` **`create log`** *`log_name`*
Creates an access log.

`#(config access-log)` **`create format`** *`format_name`*
Creates an access log format.

`#(config access-log)` **`cancel-upload all`**
Cancels upload for all logs.

`#(config access-log)` **`cancel-upload log`** *`log_name`*
Cancels upload for a log

`#(config access-log)` **`default-logging`** {**`cifs`** | **`epmapper`** | **`ftp`** | **`http`** | **`https-forward-proxy`** | **`https-reverse-proxy`** | **`icp`** | **`im`** | **`mapi`** | **`mms`** | **`p2p`** | **`rtsp`** | **`socks`** | **`ssl`** | **`tcp-tunnel`** | **`telnet`**} *`log_name`*
Sets the default log for the specified protocol.

`#(config access-log)` **`delete log`** *`log_name`*
Deletes an access log.

`#(config access-log)` **`delete format`** *`format_name`*
Deletes an access log format.

`#(config access-log)` **`disable`**
Disables access logging.

`#(config access-log)` **`early-upload`** *`megabytes`*
Sets the log size in megabytes that triggers an early upload.

`#(config access-log)` **`edit log`** *`log_name`*—changes the prompt (see **`#(config log log_name)`** **`on page 92`**)

`#(config access-log)` **`edit format`** *`format_name`*—changes the prompt (see **`#(config format format_name) on page 96`**)

`#(config access-log)` **`enable`**
Enables access logging.

`#(config access-log)` **`exit`**
Exits `#(config access-log)` mode and returns to `#(config)` mode.

`#(config access-log)` **`max-log-size`** *`megabytes`*
Sets the maximum size in megabytes that logs can reach.

`#(config access-log)` **`no default-logging`** {**`cifs`** | **`epmapper`** | **`ftp`** | **`http`** | **`https-forward-proxy`** | **`https-reverse-proxy`** | **`icp`** | **`im`** | **`mapi`** | **`mms`** | **`p2p`** | **`rtsp`** | **`socks`** | **`ssl`** | **`tcp-tunnel`** | **`telnet`**}
Disables default logging for the specified protocol.

`#(config access-log)` **`overflow-policy delete`**
Deletes the oldest log entries (up to the entire log).

`#(config access-log)` **`overflow-policy stop`**
Stops access logging until logs are uploaded.

`#(config access-log)` **`upload all`**
Uploads all logs.

`#(config access-log)` **`upload log`** *`log_name`*
Uploads a log.

`#(config access-log)` **`view`**
Shows access logging settings.

`#(config access-log)` **`view`** [**`log`** [**`brief`** | *`log_name`*]]
Shows the entire access log configuration, a brief version of the access log configuration, or the configuration for a specific access log.

`#(config access-log)` **`view`** [**`format`** [**`brief`** | *`format_name`*]]
Shows the entire log format configuration, a brief version of the log format configuration, or the configuration for a specific log format.

`#(config access-log)` **`view`** [**`statistics`** [*`log_name`*]]
Shows access log statistics for all logs or for the specified log.

`#(config access-log)` **`view`** [**`default-logging`**]
Shows the access log default policy

For More Information

- *Volume 5: Advanced Networkingg*
- *Volume 8: Access Logging*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) access-log
SGOS#(config access-log) create log test
 ok
SGOS#(config access-log) max-log-size 1028
 ok
SGOS#(config access-log) overflow-policy delete
 ok
```

View the results. (This is a partial output.)

```
SGOS#(config access-log) view log
Settings:
Log name: main
Format name: main
Description:
Logs uploaded using FTP client
Logs upload as gzip file
Wait 60 seconds between server connection attempts
FTP client:
Filename format: SG_%f_%l%m%d%H%M%S.log
Filename uses utc time
Use PASV: yes
```

```
Use secure connections: no
Primary host site:
Host:
Port: 21
Path:
Username:
Password: ************
Alternate host site:
Host:
Port: 21
Path:
```

#(config log *log_name)*

Synopsis

Use these commands to edit an access log.

Syntax

```
#(config) access-log
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config access-log)
#(config access-log) edit log log_name
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config log log_name)
```

Subcommands

`#(config log log_name) bandwidth-class bwm_class_name`
Specifies a bandwidth-management class for managing the bandwidth of this log.In order to bandwidth-manage this log, bandwidth management must be enabled. Bandwidth management is enabled by default.

Note: You must also create a bandwidth class for this access log (in bandwidth-management mode) before you can select it here. See **#(config) bandwidth-management** on page 117 for more information

---

`#(config log log_name) client-type custom`
Uploads log using the custom client.

`#(config log log_name) client-type ftp`
Uploads log using the FTP client.

`#(config log log_name) client-type http`
Uploads log using the HTTP client.

`#(config log log_name) client-type none`
Disables uploads for this log

`#(config log log_name) client-type websense`
Uploads log using the Websense client.

`#(config log log_name) commands cancel-upload`
Disables uploads for this log.

`#(config log log_name) commands close-connection`
Closes a manually opened connection to the remote server.

`#(config log log_name) commands delete-logs`
Permanently deletes all access logs on the SG appliance.

`#(config log log_name) commands open-connection`
Manually opens a connection to the remote server.

`#(config log log_name) commands rotate-remote-log`
Switches to a new remote log file.

`#(config log log_name) commands send-keep-alive`
Sends a keep-alive log packet to the remote server.

`#(config log log_name)` **commands test-upload**
Tests the upload configuration by uploading a verification file.

`#(config log log_name)` **commands upload-now**
Uploads access log now.

`#(config log log_name)` **connect-wait-time** *seconds*
Sets time to wait between server connect attempts.

`#(config log log_name)` continuous-upload

`#(config log log_name)` **continuous-upload enable**
Uploads access log continuously to remote server.

`#(config log log_name)` **continuous-upload keep-alive** *seconds*
Sets the interval between keep-alive log packets

`#(config log log_name)` **continuous-upload lag-time** *seconds*
Sets the maximum time between log packets (text upload only).

`#(config log log_name)` **continuous-upload rotate-remote** {**daily** *rotation_hour (0-23)* | **hourly** *hours* [*minutes*]}
Specifies when to switch to new remote log file.

`#(config log log_name)` **custom-client alternate** *hostname* [*port*]
Configures the alternate custom server address.

`#(config log log_name)` **custom-client primary** *hostname* [*port*]
Configures the primary custom server address.

`#(config log log_name)` **custom-client secure** {**no** | **yes**}
Selects whether to use secure connections (SSL). The default is `no`. If `yes`, the *hostname* must match the hostname in the certificate presented by the server.

`#(config log log_name)` **description** *description*
Sets the log description.

`#(config log log_name)` **early-upload** *megabytes*
Sets log size in megabytes that triggers an early upload.

`#(config log log_name)` **encryption certificate** *certificate_name*
Specifies access-log encryption settings.

`#(config log log_name)` **exit**
Exits `#(config log log_name)` mode and returns to `#(config access-log)` mode.

`#(config log log_name)` **format-name** *format_name*
Sets the log format.

`#(config log log_name)` **ftp-client alternate** {**encrypted-password** *encrypted_password* | **host** *hostname* [*port*] | **password** *password* | **path** *path* | **username** *username*}
Configures the alternate FTP host site.

`#(config log log_name)` **ftp-client filename** *format*
Configures the remote filename format

`#(config log log_name)` **ftp-client no** {**alternate** | **filename** | **primary**}
Deletes the remote filename format or the alternate or primary host parameters.

`#(config log log_name)` **ftp-client pasv** {**no** | **yes**}
Sets whether PASV or PORT command is sent.

`#(config log log_name)` **ftp-client primary** {**encrypted-password** *encrypted_password* | **host** *hostname* [*port*] | **password** *password* | **path** *path* | **username** *username*}
Configures the primary FTP host site.

`#(config log log_name) ftp-client secure {no | yes}`
Selects whether to use secure connections (FTPS). The default is no. If yes, the *hostname* must match the hostname in the certificate presented by the server.

`#(config log log_name) ftp-client time-format {local | utc}`
Selects the time format to use within upload filename.

`#(config log log_name) http-client alternate {encrypted-password encrypted_password | host hostname [port] | password password | path path | username username}`
Configures the alternate HTTP host site.

`#(config log log_name) http-client filename format`
Configures the remote filename format.

`#(config log log_name) http-client no {alternate | filename | primary}`
Deletes the remote filename format or the alternate or primary host parameters.

`#(config log log_name) http-client primary {encrypted-password encrypted_password | host hostname [port] | password password | path path | username username}`
Configures the primary HTTP host site.

`#(config log log_name) http-client secure {no | yes}`
Selects whether to use secure connections (HTTPS). The default is no. If yes, the *hostname* must match the hostname in the certificate presented by the server

`#(config log log_name) http-client time-format {local | utc}`
Selects the time format to use within upload filename.

`#(config log log_name) no {encryption | bandwidth-class | signing}`
Disables access-log encryption, bandwidth management, or digital signing for this log.

`#(config log log_name) periodic-upload enable`
Uploads access log daily/hourly to remote server.

`#(config log log_name) periodic-upload upload-interval {daily upload_hour (0-23) | hourly hours [minutes]}`
Specifies access log upload interval.

`#(config log log_name) remote-size megabytes`
Sets maximum size in MB of remote log files.

`#(config log log_name) signing keyring_id`
Specifies the keyring to be used for digital signatures.

`#(config log log_name) upload-type {gzip | text}`
Sets upload file type (gzip or text).

`#(config log log_name) view`
Shows log settings.

`#(config log log_name) websense-client`
Configures the alternate websense server address.

`#(config log log_name) websense-client alternate hostname [port]`
Configures the alternate websense server address.

`#(config log log_name) websense-client no {primary | alternate}`
Deletes the primary or alternate websense server information.

`#(config log log_name) websense-client primary hostname [port]`
Configures the primary websense server address.

For More Information

- **#(config) access-log** on page 89

- *Volume 8: Access Logging*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) access-log
SGOS#(config access-log) edit log testlog
SGOS#(config log testlog) upload-type gzip
 ok
SGOS#(config log testlog) exit
SGOS#(config access-log) exit
SGOS#(config)
```

#(config format *format_name)*

Synopsis

Use these commands to edit an access log format.

Syntax

```
#(config) access-log
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config access-log) edit format format_name
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config format format_name)
```

Subcommands

`#(config format format_name)` **exit**
Exits `#(config format format_name)` mode and returns to `#(config access-log)` mode.

`#(config format format_name)` **multi-valued-header-policy log-all-headers**
Sets multi-valued header policy to log all headers.

`#(config format format_name)` **multi-valued-header-policy log-first-header**
Sets multi-valued header policy to log the first header.

`#(config format format_name)` **multi-valued-header-policy log-last-header**
Sets multi-valued header policy to log the last header.

`#(config format format_name)` **type custom** *format_string*
Specifies custom logging format.

`#(config format format_name)` **type elff** *format_string*
Specifies W3C extended log file format.

`#(config format format_name)` **view**
Shows the format settings.

For More Information

- **`#(config) access-log`** on page 89
- *Volume 8: Access Logging*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) access-log
SGOS#(config access-log) edit format testformat
SGOS#(config format testformat) multi-valued-header-policy log-all-headers
 ok
SGOS#(config format testformat) exit
SGOS#(config access-log) exit
SGOS#(config)
```

#(config) adn

Synopsis

ADN optimization allows you to reduce the amount of tunneled TCP traffic across a WAN by means of an overlay network called an Application Delivery Network, or ADN. SG devices that participate in the ADN utilize byte caching technology, which replaces large chunks of repeated data with small tokens representing that data. SG devices in the ADN also use gzip compression to further reduce the amount of data flowing over the WAN.

Syntax

```
SGOS#(config) adn
```

The prompt changes to

```
SGOS#(config adn)
```

Subcommands

`SGOS#(config adn)` **`byte-cache`**
Configures byte caching parameters. The prompt changes to `SGOS#(config adn byte-cache)`

`SGOS#(config adn byte-cache)` **`exit`**
Exits the `SGOS#(config adn byte-cache)` submode and returns to `SGOS#(config adn)` mode.

`SGOS#(config adn byte-cache)` **`peer-size`** *`peer-id {size_in_megabytes | auto}`*
Manually sets the amount of memory used to keep track of the byte-cache hash table. Generally, the dynamic settings are acceptable; you do not need to change the dictionary size. Only if you determine that the algorithm performance does not guarantee a sufficient dictionary size for a specific peer should you manually set the dictionary size.

`SGOS#(config adn byte-cache)` **`view`**
Views the current configuration of the byte caching parameters.

`SGOS#(config adn)` {**`enable`** | **`disable`**}
Enables or disables the ADN optimization network.

`SGOS#(config adn)` **`exit`**
Exits the `SGOS#(config adn)` submode and returns to `SGOS#(config)` mode.

`SGOS#(config adn)` **`load-balancing`**
Configures load-balancing parameters. The prompt changes to `SGOS#(config adn load-balancing)`.

`SGOS#(config adn load-balancing)` {**`enable`** | **`disable`**}
Enables or disables load-balancing functionality.

`SGOS#(config adn load-balancing)` **`exit`**
Exits the submode and returns to `SGOS#(config adn)` mode.

`SGOS#(config adn load-balancing)` **`external-vip`** *`IP_address`*
Sets the external VIP. The same VIP must be configured on each SG appliance in the cluster, and the VIP must exist on an external load balancing device. The external VIP is used in explicit external load balancing.

`SGOS#(config adn load-balancing)` **`group`** *`group_name`*
Sets the group name for an ADN group. Groups are used in transparent load balancing.

`SGOS#(config adn load-balancing)` **`load-balance-only`** {**`enable`** | **`disable`**}
Specifies whether the node can take participate in load balancing (`disable`) or if it acts as a load balancer only (`enable`).

`SGOS#(config adn load-balancing)` **no** {**external-vip** | **group**}
Removes the external VIP or group name.

`SGOS#(config adn load-balancing)` **view**
Views the load-balancing configuration.

`SGOS#(config adn)` **manager**
Configures manager parameters. The prompt changes to `SGOS#(config adn manager)`.

`SGOS#(config adn manager)` **approved-peers**
Configures approved-peers. The prompt changes to `SGOS#(config adn approved-peers)`.

`SGOS#(config adn approved-peers)` **add** *peer-serial-number*

`SGOS#(config adn approved-peers)` **exit**
Exits the `SGOS#(config adn approved-peers)` submode and returns to `SGOS#(config adn manager)` mode.

`SGOS#(config adn approved-peers)` **view** [**approved-peers** | **backup-manager-id** | **pending-peers** | **primary-manager-id**]
Views the list of approved devices and connections, as well as the device ID of the ADN manager and backup manager.

`SGOS#(config adn manager)` **backup-manager** *(IP_address [device_id]| self*
Defines the backup ADN manager. While optional, defining a backup ADN manager is highly recommended. If the primary ADN manager goes offline for any reason, routing updates are no longer available which prevent nodes from learning when other nodes enter and leave the network. Existing route information is still retained by the peers, however.

`SGOS#(config adn manager)` **exit**
Exits the `SGOS#(config adn manager)` submode and returns to `SGOS#(config adn)` mode.

`SGOS#(config adn manager)` **no** {**backup-manager** | **primary-manager**}
Clears the IP address of the specified ADN manager or backup manager.

`SGOS#(config adn manager)` **pending-peers**
Configures pending peers. The prompt changes to `SGOS#(config adn pending-peers)`

`SGOS#(config adn pending-peers)` {**accept** | **reject**} {*device-id* | **all**}
Allows or denies a specific peer or all peers that want to join a network.

`SGOS#(config adn pending-peers)` {**enable** | **disable**}
Enables or disables the pending-peers functionality.

`SGOS#(config adn pending-peers)` **exit**
Exits the `SGOS#(config adn pending-peers)` submode and returns to `SGOS#(config adn manager)` mode.

`SGOS#(config adn pending-peers)` **view**
Views the list of pending devices and connections.

`SGOS#(config adn manager)` **port** *port_number*
Sets the port number for the primary and backup ADN managers. All SG appliance devices in the ADN must use the same manager port number. The default is port 3034; it should not be changed.

`SGOS#(config adn manager)` **primary-manager** *IP_address*
Defines the primary ADN manager. The responsibility of the ADN manager is to keep up to date the routing information from each SG appliance node on the WAN optimization network and to broadcast that information to all the peers.

`SGOS#(config adn manager)` **secure-port** *port_number*

`SGOS#(config adn manager)` **view**
Views the adn manager configuration.

`SGOS#(config adn)` **routing**
Configures routing information. The prompt changes to `SGOS#(config adn routing)`.

`SGOS#(config adn routing)` **advertise-internet-gateway**
Enters `advertise-internet-gateway` mode to enable the SG appliance as an Internet gateway. Changes the prompt to `SGOS#(config adn advertise-internet-gateway)`.

`SGOS#(config adn routing advertise-internet-gateway)` {**disable** | **enable**}
Enables or disables the ability for this peer to be used as an Internet gateway.

`SGOS#(config adn routing advertise-internet-gateway)` **exempt-subnet** {**add** {*subnet_prefix*[*/prefix_length*]} **clear-all** | **remove** {*subnet_prefix*[*/prefix_length*]} | **view**}
Manages subnets t that must not be routed to Internet gateway(s).

`SGOS#(config adn routing advertise-internet-gateway)` **exit**
Leaves the `advertise-internet-gateway` submode and returns to the routing submode.

`SGOS#(config adn routing advertise-internet-gateway)` **view**
Displays the advertise-internet-gateway parameters.

`SGOS#(config adn routing)` **prefer-transparent** {**enable** | **disable**}
Forces peers to always use advertised routes or to allows them to use transparent routes if they are available.

`SGOS#(config adn routing)` **exit**
Exits the `SGOS#(config adn routing)` submode and returns to `SGOS#(config adn)` mode.

`SGOS#(config adn routing)` **server-subnets**
Configures server-subnets that will be advertised to other peers on the WAN optimization network. The prompt changes to `SGOS#(config adn routing server-subnets)`.

`SGOS#(config adn routing server-subnets)` **add** *subnet_prefix*[*/prefix length*]
Adds a subnet with the specified prefix and, optionally, the prefix length, to the SG appliance routes that it sends to the ADN manager.

`SGOS#(config adn routing server-subnets)` **clear-all**
Deletes all subnets listed on the system.

`SGOS#(config adn routing server-subnets)` **exit**
Exits the `SGOS#(config adn routing server-subnets)` submode and returns to `SGOS#(config adn routing)` submode.

`SGOS#(config adn routing server-subnets)` **view**
Views the current configuration of the server subnets.

`SGOS#(config adn routing)` **view**
Views the current parameters of the routing configuration.

`SGOS#(config adn)` **security**
Configures authorization parameters. Changes the prompt to `SGOS#(config adn security)`.

`SGOS#(config adn security)` **authorization** {**enable** | **disable**}
Enables connection authorization.

`SGOS#(config adn security)` **device-auth-profile** *profile_name* [no-authorization]
Select the ADN device-auth profile name. The profile must already exist.

`SGOS#(config adn security)` **exit**
Leaves the security submode. Returns to `(config adn)` mode.

`SGOS#(config adn security)` **manager-listening-mode** {**plain-only** | **plain-read-only** | **secure-only**| **both**}
Configure manager listening mode. Both refers to `plain-only` or `secure-only`.

`SGOS#(config adn security)` **no device-auth-profile**
Clears the profile name.

`SGOS#(config adn security)` **secure-outbound** {**none** | **routing-only**| **secure-proxies** | **all**}

Configure outbound connection encryption, where `none` indicates the encryption is disabled, `routing-only` enables encryption on outbound traffic, `secure-proxies` enables encryption on secure proxy (that is, HTTPS or SSL) traffic, and `all` indicates that encryption is enabled on all outbound connections.

`SGOS#(config adn security)` **`tunnel-listening-mode`** {**`plain-only`** | **`secure-only`**| **`both`**}
Starts the specified tunnel listening mode.

`SGOS#(config adn security)` **`view`**
View security configuration

`SGOS#(config adn)` **`tunnel`**
Configures parameters for tunnel connections. Tunnel connections are established between ADN peers in order to carry optimized traffic over the WAN. Changes the prompt to `SGOS#(config adn tunnel)`.

`SGOS#(config adn tunnel)` **`connect-transparent`** {**`enable`** | **`disable`**}
Control outbound ADN transparent tunnel initiation

`SGOS#(config adn tunnel)` **`exit`**
Exits the `SGOS#(config adn tunnel)` submode and returns to `SGOS#(config adn)` mode.

`SGOS#(config adn tunnel)` **`preserve-dest-port`** {**`enable`** | **`disable`**}
Preserve destination port on outbound connections

`SGOS#(config adn tunnel)` **`port`** *`port_number`*
Sets the port number for the client or data port used by ADN tunnel connections. Each ADN node has a TCP listener on this port in order to receive tunnel connections. The default is port 3035; it should not be changed.

`SGOS#(config adn tunnel)` **`proxy-processing http`** {**`enable`** | **`disable`**}
Enables HTTP handoff. This option should be used with care as both byte caching and object caching require significant resources. Be sure that your SG devices are sized correctly if you intend to use this option.

`SGOS#(config adn tunnel)` **`reflect-client-ip`** (**`allow`** | **`deny`** | **`use-local-ip`**)
Allows the concentrator proxy to follow, deny, or ignore the branch proxy reflect-client-ip settings.

`SGOS#(config adn tunnel)` **`secure-port`** *`port_number`*
Configure listening port for secure ADN tunnel

`SGOS#(config adn tunnel)` **`tcp-window-size`**
Sets the window size used by TCP on all ADN tunnel connections. The default is 65536.

`SGOS#(config adn tunnel)` **`view`**
Views the current configuration ADN tunnel parameters.

`SGOS#(config adn)` **`view`**
Views the configuration of the WAN optimization parameters you created on this system.

For More Information

- *Volume 5: Advanced Networking*

Example

```
SGOS#(config adn)
SGOS#(config adn) enable
SGOS#(config adn) manager
SGOS#(config adn manager) primary-manager 10.25.36.47
SGOS#(config adn) backup-manager 10.25.36.48
```

```
SGOS#(config adn) tunnel
SGOS#(config adn tunnel) tcp-window-size 200000
SGOS#(config adn tunnel) exit
SGOS#(config adn) routing
SGOS#(config adn routing) server-subnets
SGOS#(config adn routing server-subnets) clear-all
SGOS#(config adn routing server-subnets) add 10.9.59.0/24
SGOS#(config adn routing server-subnets) exit
SGOS#(config adn routing) exit
SGOS#(config adn) byte-cache
SGOS#(config adn byte-cache) max-peer-memory 40
SGOS#(config adn byte-cache) exit
```

```
SGOS#(config adn) view
Application Delivery Network Configuration:
ADN:                      enabled
External VIP:             none

Manager Configuration:
Primary manager:          self
Backup manager:           none
Port:                     3034
Secure port:              3036
Approved device           Connecting from
Allow pending devices:    enabled
Pending device            Connecting from
Byte-cache Configuration:
Max number of peers:      10347
Max peer memory:          30

Tunnel Configuration:
Port:                     3035
Secure port:              3037
proxy-processing http:    disabled
accept-transparent:       enabled
connect-transparent:      enabled
preserve-dest-port:       enabled
TCP window size:          65536
reflect-client-ip:        use-local-ip

Routing Configuration:
Internet Gateway:         disabled
Exempt Server subnet:     10.0.0.0/8
Exempt Server subnet:     172.16.0.0/12
Exempt Server subnet:      192.168.0.0/16

Security Configuration:
Device-auth-profile:      bluecoat
Manager-listening mode:   plain-only
Tunnel-listening mode:    plain-only
Authorization:            enabled
Secure-outbound:          none
```

#(config) alert

Synopsis

Configures the notification properties of hardware environmental metrics (called *sensors*) and the threshold and notification properties of system resource health monitoring metrics. These *health monitoring* metrics enable Director (and other third-party network management tools) to provide a remote view of the health of the SG system.

Note: Sensor thresholds are not configurable.

Syntax

```
#(config) alert threshold metric_name warning_threshold warning_interval
critical_threshold critical_interval
#(config) alert notification metric_name notification_method
```

Subcommands

`#(config) alert threshold | notification cpu-utilization`
Sets alert threshold and notification properties for CPU utilization metrics.

`#(config) alert threshold | notification license-utilization license_type`
Sets alert threshold and notification properties for licenses with user limits.

`#(config) alert threshold | notification license-expiration license_type`
Sets alert threshold and notification properties for license expiration.

`#(config) alert threshold | notification memory-pressure`
Sets alert threshold and notification properties for memory pressure metrics.

`#(config) alert threshold | notification network-utilization adapter:interface`
Sets alert threshold and notification properties for interface utilization metrics.

`#(config) alert notification sensor sensor-type`
Sets alert notification properties for hardware environmentals. See "Sensors" on page 103 for a description of the sensor types.

`#(config) alert notification disk-status disk_number`
Sets alert notification properties for disk status messages.

Sensors

The following table describes the sensor metrics. The hardware and environmental metrics are referred to as sensors. Sensor threshold values are not configurable and are preset to optimal values. For example, if the CPU temperature reaches 55 degrees Celsius, it is considered to have entered the Warning threshold.

Table 3-1. Sensor Health Monitoring Metrics

Metric	MIB	Threshold States

Disk status	Disk	Critical:
		`Bad`
		Warning:
		`Not Present`
		`Removed`
		`Offline`
		OK:
		`Present`
		`Initializing`
		`Inserted`
		`Slot_empty`

Temperature Bus temperature CPU temperature	Sensor	`High-critical` `High-warning`

Fan
CPU Fan
	Sensor	Critical:
		`Low-critical`
		Warning:
		`Low-warning`

Voltage
Bus Voltage
CPU voltage
Power Supply voltage
	Sensor	Critical:
		`critical`
		`high-critical`
		`low-critical`
		Warning:
		`high-warning`
		`low-warning`

Thresholds

The following table describes the health monitoring metrics and default thresholds. Sensor thresholds cannot be set.

Table 3-2. System Resource Health Monitoring Metrics

Metric	Units	Threshold and Interval Defaults	Notes
CPU Utilization	Percentage	Critical: 95/120 Warning: 80/120	Measures the value of CPU 0 on multi-processor systems--*not* the average of all CPU activity.
Memory Pressure	Percentage	Critical: 95/120 Warning: 90/120	Memory pressure occurs when memory resources become limited, causing new connections to be delayed.

Table 3-2. System Resource Health Monitoring Metrics (Continued)

Metric	Units	Threshold and Interval Defaults	Notes
Network Utilization	Percentage	Critical: 90/120 Warning: 60/120	Measures the traffic (in and out) on the interface to determine if it is approaching the maximum allowable bandwidth.
License Utilization	Percentage	Critical: 100/0 Warning: 90/0	For licenses that have user limits, monitors the number of users.
License Expiration	Days	Critical: 0/0 Warning: 30/0	Warns of impending license expiration. For license expiration metrics, intervals are ignored. Refer to *Volume 10: Managing the Blue Coat SG Appliance* for more information.

For the purposes of notification, thresholds are defined by two variables, the *threshold level* and the *threshold interval*:

- The threshold level describes the state of the metric: OK, Warning, or Critical.

Note: Sensors have different threshold levels than OK, Warning, and Critical. See "Sensors" on page 103 for more information.

- The threshold interval specifies the period of time that the metric must stay in the level before an alert is triggered.

Consider the following command:

```
#(config) alert threshold cpu-utilization 80 20 90 20
```

The preceding command sets the `cpu-utilization` threshold values as follows:

- Warning Threshold=80 (percent)
- Warning Interval=20 (seconds)
- Critical Threshold=90 (percent)
- Critical Interval=20 (seconds)

In this example, if CPU activity hovers between 80% and 89% for 20 seconds, the cpu-utilization metric is considered to be in the Warning condition.

Notification occurs when a threshold state changes, for example, from OK to Warning. See "Notification Methods" on page 105 for more information.

Notification Methods

The following notification methods can be set. To set more than one type of notification, separate the notification method by spaces. For example:

```
sgos# alert notification license-utilization quicktime email log trap
```

Table 3-3. Alert Notification Methods

Method	Description
email	Notify using e-mail only
log	Notify using Event log only
trap	Notify using SNMP trap only
none	Disable notification

Licenses

The license utilization and expiration alert settings can be modified for the following licenses.

Table 3-4. Health Monitoring License Options

Method.	Description
aol-im	Alert properties for AOL Instant Messaging
msn-im	Alert properties for MSN Instant Messaging
quicktime	Alert properties for QuickTime Streaming
real-media	Alert properties for Real Media Streaming
windows-media	Alert properties for Windows Media Streaming
yahoo-im	Alert properties for Yahoo Instant Messaging
sgos	Alert properties for SGOS (expiration only)
ssl	Alert properties for SSL Proxy (expiration only)

The threshold values for license expiration metrics are set in days until expiration. In this context, a "critical" threshold indicates that license expiration is imminent. This is the only metric in which the Critical threshold value should be smaller than the Warning threshold value. For example, if you set the Warning threshold to 45, an alert is sent when there are 45 days remaining in the license period. The Critical threshold would be less than 45 days, for example 5 days.

For the license expiration metrics, the threshold interval is irrelevant and is set by default to 0. You should set the Warning Threshold to a value that gives you ample time to renew your license. By default, all license expiration metrics have a Warning Threshold of 30 days. By default, the Critical Threshold is configured to 0, which means that a trap is immediately sent upon license expiration.

For More Information

- *Volume 10: Managing the Blue Coat SG Appliance*

Examples

```
#(config) alert threshold cpu-utilization 80 20 90 20
#(config) alert threshold license-utilization quicktime 80 20 90 20
#(config) alert threshold license-expiration quicktime 30 0 5 0
#(config) alert notification cpu-utilization trap
#(config) alert notification license-utilization quicktime email log trap
```

```
#(config) alert notification sensor fan email
#(config) alert notification sensor voltage trap
```

#(config) archive-configuration

Synopsis

Archiving a SG system configuration on a regular basis is always a good idea. In the rare case of a complete system failure, restoring an SG appliance to its previous state is simplified by loading an archived system configuration from an FTP, HTTP, or HTTPS server. The archive contains all system settings differing from system defaults, along with any forwarding and security lists installed on the SG appliance.

Archive and restore operations must be done from the CLI. There is no Management Console Web interface for archive and restore.

Syntax

```
#(config) archive-configuration [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

`#(config) archive-configuration encrypted-password` *encrypted_password*
Encrypted password for upload host (not required for TFTP)

`#(config) archive-configuration filename-prefix` *filename*
Specifies the prefix that should be applied to the archive configuration on upload.

`#(config) archive-configuration host` *hostname*
Specifies the FTP host to which the archive configuration should be uploaded.

`#(config) archive-configuration password` *password*
Specifies the password for the FTP host to which the archive configuration should be uploaded

`#(config) archive-configuration path` *path*
Specifies the path to the FTP host to which the archive configuration should be uploaded.

`#(config) archive-configuration protocol {ftp | tftp}`
Indicates the upload protocol to be used for the archive configuration using FTP or TFTP.

`#(config) archive-configuration username` *username*
Specifies the username for the FTP or FTP host to which the archive configuration should be uploaded.

For More Information

- *Volume 1: Getting Started*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) archive-configuration host host3
 ok
```

#(config) attack-detection

Synopsis

The SG appliance can reduce the effects of distributed denial of service (DDoS) attacks and port scanning, two of the most common virus infections.

The SG appliance prevents attacks by limiting the number of TCP connections from each client IP address and either will not respond to connection attempts from a client already at this limit or will reset the connection.

Syntax

```
#(config) attack-detection
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config attack-detection)
```

Subcommands

`#(config attack-detection) client`
Changes the prompt to **#(config client)** on page 111.

`#(config attack-detection) exit`
Leaves `#(config attack-detection)` mode and returns to `#(config)` mode.

`#(config attack-detection) server`
Changes the prompt to **#(config server)** on page 114.

`#(config attack-detection) view client [blocked | connections | statistics]`
Displays client information. The `blocked` option displays the clients blocked at the network level, the `connections` option displays the client connection table, and the `statistics` option displays client request failure statistics.

`#(config attack-detection) view configuration`
Allows you to view attack-detection configuration settings or the number of current connections.

`#(config attack-detection) view server [statistics]`
Displays server information. The statistics option displays server-connection failure statistics

For More Information

- *Volume 5: Advanced Networking*

Example

```
#(config attack-detection) view configuration
Client limits enabled:            false
Client interval:                  20 minutes
Default client limits:
Client connection limit:          100
Client failure limit:             50
Client warning limit:             10
Blocked client action:            Drop
Client connection unblock time:   unlimited
```

```
Client limits for 10.9.59.210:
Client connection limit:          100
Client failure limit:             50
Client warning limit:             10
Blocked client action:            Drop
Client connection unblock time:   unlimited
```

#(config client)

Synopsis

Configures a client for attack detection.

Syntax

```
#(config attack-detection) client
```

This changes the prompt to

```
#(config client)
```

Subcommands

`#(config client)` **`block`** *`ip_address`* [*`minutes`*]
Blocks a specific IP address for the number of minutes listed. If the optional minutes argument is omitted, the client is blocked until explicitly unblocked.

`#(config client)` **`create`** *`ip_address or ip_address_and_length`*
Creates a client with the specified IP address or subnet.

`#(config client)` **`default`** {**`block-action`** {**`drop`** | **`send-tcp-rst`**} | **`connection-limit`** *`number_of_tcp_connections`* | **`failure-limit`** *`number_of_requests`* | **`unblock-time`** *`minutes`* | **`warning-limit`** *`number_of_warnings`*}
`Default` indicates the values that are used if a client does not have specific limits set. These settings can over overridden on a per-client basis.

If they are modified on a per-client basis, the specified limits become the default for new clients. To change the limits on a per-client basis, see *`edit`*, below.

System defaults for attack-detection limits are:

- block-action: drop
- connection-limit: 100
- failure-limit: 50
- unblock-time: unlimited
- warning-limit: 10

`#(config client)` **`delete`** *`ip_address or ip_address_and_length`*
Deletes the specified client.

`#(config client)` **`disable-limits`**
Disables attack detection.

`#(config client)` **`edit`** *`ip_address`*
Changes the prompt to `#(config client` *`ip_address`*`)`.

`#(config client` *`IP_address`*`)` **`block-action`** {**`drop`** | **`send-tcp-rst`**}
Indicates the behavior when the client is at the maximum number of connections or exceed the warning limit: drop connections that are over the limit or send TCP RST for connections over the limit. The default is drop.

`#(config client` *`IP_address`*`)` **`connection-limit`** *`number_of_tcp_connections`*
Indicates the number of simultaneous connections between 1 and 65535. The default is 100.

`#(config client` *`IP_address`*`)` **`exit`**
Exits the **`#(config client`** *`ip_address`***`)`** submode and returns to `#(config client)` mode.

`#(config client IP_address) failure-limit number_of_requests`
Indicates the maximum number of failed requests a client is allowed before the proxy starts issuing warnings. Default is 50. This limit can be modified on a per-client basis.

`#(config client IP_address) no {connection-limit | failure-limit | warning-limit | unblock-time}`
Clears the specified limits on a per-client basis.

If you edit an existing client's limits to a smaller value, the new value only applies to new connections to that client. For example, if the old value was 10 simultaneous connections and the new value is 5, existing connections above 5 are not dropped.

`#(config client IP_address) unblock-time minutes`
Indicates the amount of time a client is blocked at the network level when the client-warning-limit is exceeded. Time must be a multiple of 10 minutes, up to a maximum of 1440. The default is unlimited.

`#(config client IP_address) view`
Displays the limits for this client.

`#(config client IP_address) warning-limit number_of_warnings}`
Indicates the number of warnings sent to the client before the client is blocked at the network level and the administrator is notified. The default is 10; the maximum is 100.

`#(config client IP_address) enable-limits`
Enables attack detection. This is a global setting and cannot be configured individually for specific clients.

`#(config client IP_address) interval minutes`
Indicates the amount of time, in multiples of 10 minutes, that client activity is monitored. The default is 20. Note that this is a global limit and cannot be modified for individual clients.

`#(config client IP_address) no default {connection-limit | failure-limit | warning-limit | unblock-time}`
Clears the specified limit settings. These settings are applied to all new clients.

`#(config client IP_address) view [blocked | connections | statistics]`
Views all limits for all clients, or you can show clients blocked at the network level, view the client connection table, or view client request failure statistics.

`#(config client IP_address) unblock ip_address`
Releases a specific IP address.

For More Information

- *Volume 5: Advanced Networking*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) attack-detection
SGOS#(config attack-detection) client
SGOS#(config client) view
Client limits enabled:            true
Client interval:                  20 minutes
Default client limits:
Client connection limit:          700
Client failure limit:             50
Client warning limit:             10
Blocked client action:            Drop
Client connection unblock time:   unlimited
```

```
Client limits for 10.9.17.159:
Client connection limit:          unlimited
Client failure limit:             unlimited
Client warning limit:             unlimited
Blocked client action:            Drop
Client connection unblock time:   unlimited
Client limits for 10.9.17.134:
Client connection limit:          700
Client failure limit:             50
Client warning limit:             10
Blocked client action:            Drop
Client connection unblock time:   unlimited
```

#(config server)

Synopsis

Configures a server for attack detection.

Syntax

```
#(config attack-detection) server
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config server)
```

Subcommands

`#(config server)` **`create`** *`hostname`*
Creates a server or server group that is identified by the hostname.

`#(config server)` **`delete`** *`hostname`*
Deletes a server or server group.

`#(config server)` **`edit`** *`hostname`*
Changes the prompt to `#(config server` *`hostname`*`)`

`#(config server` *`hostname`*`)` **`add`** *`hostname`*
Adds an additional server to this server group.

`#(config server` *`hostname`*`)` **`exit`**
Exits the `#(config server` *`hostname`*`)` submode and returns to `#(config server)` mode.

`#(config server` *`hostname`*`)` **`request-limit`** *`number_of_requests`*
Indicates the number of simultaneous requests allowed from this server or server group. The default is 1000.

`#(config server` *`hostname`*`)` **`view`**
Displays the request limit for this server or server group.

`#(config server)` **`exit`**
Exits the `#(config server)` submode and returns to `#(config attack-detection)` mode.

`#(config server)` **`view`** [**`statistics`**]
Displays the request limit for all servers or server groups.

For More Information

- *Volume 5: Advanced Networking*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) attack-detection
SGOS#(config attack-detection) server
SGOS#(config server) create test1
ok
SGOS#(config server) edit test1
SGOS#(config server test1) add 10.9.17.134
ok
SGOS#(config server test1) view
Server configuration for test1:
Request limit:  1000
Host:           10.9.17.134
```

#(config) bandwidth-gain

Synopsis

Bandwidth gain is a measure of the effective increase of server bandwidth resulting from the client's use of a content accelerator. For example, a bandwidth gain of 100% means that traffic volume from the SG appliance to its clients is twice as great as the traffic volume being delivered to the SG appliance from the origin server(s). Using bandwidth gain mode can provide substantial gains in apparent performance.

Keep in mind that bandwidth gain is a relative measure of the SG appliance's ability to amplify traffic volume between an origin server and the clients served by the device.

Syntax

`#(config)` **`bandwidth-gain disable`**
Disables bandwidth-gain mode

`#(config)` **`bandwidth-gain enable`**
Enables bandwidth-gain mode.

For More Information

- *Volume 5: Advanced Networking*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) bandwidth-gain enable
 ok
```

#(config) bandwidth-management

Synopsis

Bandwidth management allows you to classify, control, and, if required, limit the amount of bandwidth used by a class of network traffic flowing into or out of the SG appliance.

Syntax

```
#(config) bandwidth-management
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config bandwidth-management)
```

Subcommands

`#(config bandwidth-management)` **`create`** *`class_name`*
Creates a bandwidth-management class.

`#(config bandwidth-management)` **`delete`** *`class_name`*
Deletes the specified bandwidth-management class. Note that if another class has a reference to the specified class, this command fails.

`#(config bandwidth-management)` **`disable`**
Disables bandwidth-management.

`#(config bandwidth-management)` **`edit`** *`class_name`*—changes the prompt (see **`#(config bandwidth-management class_name)`** on page 118)

`#(config bandwidth-management)` **`enable`**
Enables bandwidth-management.

`#(config bandwidth-management)` **`exit`**
Exits `#(config bandwidth-management)` mode and returns to `#(config)` mode.

`#(config bandwidth-management)` **`view configuration`** [*`bandwidth_class`*]
Displays bandwidth-management configuration for all bandwidth-management classes or for the class specified.

`#(config bandwidth-management)` **`view statistics`** [*`bandwidth_class`*]
Displays bandwidth-management statistics for all bandwidth-management classes or for the class specified.

For More Information

- *Volume 5: Advanced Networking*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) bandwidth-management
SGOS#(config bandwidth-management) enable
 ok
SGOS#(config bandwidth-management) create Office_A
 ok
SGOS#(config bandwidth-management) edit Office_A
SGOS#(config bw-class Office_A) exit
SGOS#(config bandwidth-management) exit
SGOS#(config)
```

#(config bandwidth-management *class_name)*

Synopsis

This command allows you to edit a bandwidth-management class.

Syntax

```
#(config) bandwidth-management
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config bandwidth-management)
#(config bandwidth-management) edit class_name
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config bandwidth-management class_name)
```

Subcommands

`#(config bandwidth-management class_name)` **`exit`**
Exits `#(config bandwidth-management class_name)` mode and returns to `#(config bandwidth-management)` mode.

`#(config bandwidth-management class_name)` **`max-bandwidth`** *`maximum_in_kbps`*
Sets the maximum bandwidth for this class.

`#(config bandwidth-management class_name)` **`min-bandwidth`** *`minimum_in_kbps`*
Sets the minimum bandwidth for this class

`#(config bandwidth-management class_name)` **`no max-bandwidth`**
Resets the maximum bandwidth of this bandwidth-management class to the default (unlimited—no maximum)

`#(config bandwidth-management class_name)` **`no min-bandwidth`**
Resets the minimum bandwidth of this bandwidth-management class to the default (no minimum).

`#(config bandwidth-management class_name)` **`no parent`**
Clears the parent from this bandwidth-management class.

`#(config bandwidth-management class_name)` **`parent`** *`class_name`*
Makes the specified class a parent of the class being configured.

`#(config bandwidth-management class_name)` **`priority`** *`value_from_0_to_7`*
Sets the priority for this bandwidth-management class. The lowest priority level is 0 and the highest is 7.

`#(config bandwidth-management class_name)` **`view`** `[`*`children`*`]`
Displays the settings for this bandwidth-management class or displays the settings for the children of this bandwidth-management class.

For More Information

- *Volume 5: Advanced Networking*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) bandwidth-management
SGOS#(config bandwidth-management) edit CEO_A
SGOS#(config bw-class CEO_A) parent Office_A
 ok
SGOS#(config bw-class CEO_A) priority 2
 ok
SGOS#(config bw-class CEO_A) exit
SGOS#(config bandwidth-management) exit
SGOS#(config)
```

#(config) banner

Synopsis

This command enables you to define a login banner for your users.

Syntax

`#(config)` **`banner login`** *`string`*
Sets the login banner to the value of *`string`*.

`#(config)` **`banner no login`**
Sets the login banner to null.

For More Information

- *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*

Example

```
#(config) banner login "Sales and Marketing Intranet Web"
 ok
```

#(config) bridge

Synopsis

Allows you to configure bridging.

Syntax

```
#(config) bridge
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config bridge)
```

Subcommands

`#(config bridge)` **`bandwidth-class`** *`bridgename`*
Sets bridge bandwidth class.

`#(config bridge)` **`create`** *`bridgename`*
Creates a bridge. This bridge name is case insensitive. You cannot name one bridge "ABC" and another bridge "abc".

`#(config bridge)` **`delete`** *`bridgename`*
Deletes the bridge.

`#(config bridge)` **`edit`** *`bridgename`*
Changes the prompt to `#(config bridge` *`bridgename`*`)`

`#(config bridge` *`bridgename`*`)` **`exit`**
Exits the `#(config bridge` *`hostname`*`)` submode and returns to `#(config bridge)` mode.

`#(config bridge)` **`no bandwidth-class`**
Clears the bandwidth-class settings.

`#(config bridge)` **`view`** {**`configuration`** | **`statistics`** | **`fwtable`**} *`bridgename`*
Displays information for the specified bridge or fall all bridges.

Note: To bandwidth-manage a bridge, bandwidth management must be enabled. Bandwidth management is enabled by default if you have a valid bandwidth-management license. You must also create a bandwidth class for bridging (in bandwidth-management mode) before you can select it here. See **`#(config bandwidth-management class_name)`** on page 118 for more information.

For More Information

- *Volume 1: Getting Started*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) bridge
SGOS#(config bridge) create test
 ok
SGOS#(config bridge) exit
SGOS#(config)
```

#(config bridge *bridge_name)*

Synopsis

This command allows you to edit a bridge.

Syntax

`#(config)` **`bridge`**

This changes the prompt to:

`#(config bridge)`

`#(config bridge)` **`edit`** *`bridge_name`*

This changes the prompt to:

`#(config bridge` *`bridge_name`*`)`

Subcommands

`#(config bridge` *`bridgename`*`)` **`attach-interface`** *`adapter#:interface#`*
Attaches the interface to the bridge.

`#(config bridge` *`bridgename`*`)` **`clear-fwtable`** {**`static`**}
Clears bridge forwarding table.

`#(config bridge` *`bridgename`*`)` **`clear-statistics`**
Clears the bridge statistics.

`#(config bridge` *`bridgename`*`)` **`exit`**
Exits #(config bridge *`bridge_name`)* mode and returns to `#(config bridge)` mode.

`#(config bridge` *`bridgename`*`)` **`failover`** {**`group`** | **`mode`**} {**`parallel`** | **`serial`**}
Associates the bridge to a failover group or sets the bridge failover mode.

`#(config bridge` *`bridgename`*`)` **`mode ?`**
Sets the mode for network adapters that can be used as either a pass-through adapter or as a Network Interface Card.

`#(config bridge` *`bridgename`*`)` **`no`** {**`interface`** | **`failover`** | **`static-fwtable-entry`**}
Clears the settings as follows:
`interface`: Removes the interface from the bridge.
`failover`: Negates failover settings.
`static-fwtable-entry`: Clears the static forwarding table entry.

`#(config bridge` *`bridgename`*`)` **`spanning-tree`** *`adapter#:interface#`* {**`enable`** | **`disable`**}
Enables or disables spanning tree participation.

`#(config bridge` *`bridgename`*`)` **`static-fwtable-entry`** *`adapter#:interface# mac-address`*
Adds a static forwarding table entry.

`#(config bridge` *`bridgename`*`)` **`view`** {**`configuration`** | **`statistics`** | **`fwtable`**}
Displays information for the specified bridge.

For More Information

- *Volume 1: Getting Started*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) bridge
SGOS#(config bridge) edit b_1
SGOS#(config bridge b_1) attach interface 0:1
 ok
SGOS#(config bridge b_1) failover mode parallel
 ok
SGOS#(config bridge b_1) exit
SGOS#(config bridge) exit
SGOS#(config)
```

#(config) caching

Synopsis

Objects can be stored and managed for later retrieval.

Discussion

When a stored HTTP object expires, it is placed in a refresh list. The SG appliance processes the refresh list in the background, when it is not serving requests. Refresh policies define how the device handles the refresh process.

The HTTP caching options allow you to specify:

- Maximum object size
- Negative responses
- Refresh parameters

In addition to HTTP objects, the SG appliance can store objects requested using FTP. When the device retrieves and stores an FTP object, it uses two methods to determine how long the object should stay cached.

- If the object has a last-modified date, the SG appliance assigns a refresh date to the object that is a percentage of the last-modified date.
- If the object does not have a last-modified date, the SG appliance assigns a refresh date to the object based on a fixed period of time.

Syntax

`#(config) caching`

This changes the prompt to:

`#(config caching)`

Subcommands

`#(config caching) always-verify-source`
Specifies the SG appliance to always verify the freshness of an object with the object source.

`#(config caching) exit`
Exits the `#(config caching)` mode and returns to `#(config)` mode.

#(config caching) ftp—changes the prompt to **#(config caching ftp) on page 126**

`#(config caching) max-cache-size` *megabytes*
Specifies the maximum size of the cache to the value indicated by *megabytes*.

`#(config caching) negative-response` *minutes*
Specifies that negative responses should be cached for the time period identified by *minutes*

`#(config caching) no always-verify-source`
Specifies that the SG appliance should never verify the freshness of an object with the object source

`#(config caching) refresh automatic`
Specifies that the SG appliance should manage the refresh bandwidth.

`#(config caching) refresh bandwidth` *kbps*
Specifies the amount of bandwidth in kilobits to utilize for maintaining object freshness.

`#(config caching) refresh no automatic`
Specifies that the SG appliance should not manage the refresh bandwidth.

`#(config caching)` **`view`**
Displays caching parameters.

For More Information

- *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) caching
SGOS#(config caching) always-verify-source
 ok
SGOS#(config caching) max-cache-size 100
 ok
SGOS#(config caching) negative-response 15
 ok
SGOS#(config caching) refresh automatic
 ok
SGOS#(config caching) exit
SGOS#(config)
```

#(config caching ftp)

Synopsis

The FTP caching options allow you to specify:

- Transparency
- Maximum object size
- Caching objects by date
- Caching objects without a last-modified date: if an FTP object is served without a last modified date, the SG appliance caches the object for a set period of time.

Syntax

```
#(config) caching
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config caching)
```

```
#(config caching) ftp
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config caching ftp)
```

Subcommands

`#(config caching ftp) disable | enable}`
Disables or enables caching FTP objects

`#(config caching ftp) exit`
Exits `#(config caching ftp)` mode and returns to `#(config caching)` mode.

`#(config caching ftp) type-m-percent` *percent*
Specifies the TTL for objects with a last-modified time.

`#(config caching ftp) type-n-initial` *hours*
Specifies the TTL for objects with no expiration.

`#(config caching ftp) view`
Shows the current FTP caching settings.

For More Information

- *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*

Example

```
SGOS#(config caching) ftp
SGOS#(config caching ftp) enable
 ok
SGOS#(config caching ftp) max-cache-size 200
 ok
SGOS#(config caching ftp) type-m-percent 20
 ok
SGOS#(config caching ftp) type-n-initial 10
 ok
SGOS#(config caching ftp) exit
SGOS#(config caching) exit
```

#(config) cifs

Synopsis

Syntax

`SGOS#(config)` **`cifs`**

This changes the prompt to:

```
SGOS#(config cifs)
```

Subcommands

`SGOS#(config cifs)` **`directory-cache-time`** *seconds*

This option determines how long directory information is kept in cache. Changes made to a directory by clients not using the SG appliance are not visible to SG clients if they occur within this time interval. The default cache time is 30 seconds.

`SGOS#(config cifs)` **`exit`**

Returns to the (config submode.

SGOS#(config cifs) **`read-ahead`** {**`disable`** | **`enable`**}

This option is enabled by default and improves performance by attempting to fetch and cache blocks of data that might be requested by a client before the actual request occurs. Disabling this option causes the SG appliance to fetch and cache only data actually requested by clients.

`SGOS#(config cifs)` **`strict-directory-expiration`** {**`disable`** | **`enable`**}

This option is disabled by default. When this option is enabled and `directory-cache-time` has a value of 0, directories are refreshed synchronously instead of in the background. This is needed when the set of visible objects in a directory returned by a server can vary between users.

`SGOS#(config cifs)` **`view`** {**`configuration`** | **`statistics`**}

Views the configuration or statistics of CIFS.

`SGOS#(config cifs)` **`write-back`** (**`full`** | **`none`**}

This option is set to `full` by default, which improves performance by acknowledging client writes immediately and sending them to the server in the background. Setting this option to `none` forces all writes to be sent to the server synchronously.

For More Information

- *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*

Example

#(config) clock

Synopsis

To manage objects in the cache, an SG appliance must know the current Universal Time Coordinates (UTC) time. By default, the device attempts to connect to a Network Time Protocol (NTP) server to acquire the UTC time. The SG appliance includes a list of NTP servers available on the Internet, and attempts to connect to them in the order they appear in the NTP server list on the NTP tab. If the SG appliance cannot access any of the listed NTP servers, you must manually set the UTC time using the `clock` command.

Syntax

```
#(config) clock [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

`#(config) clock day` *day*
Sets the Universal Time Code (UTC) day to the day indicated by *day*. The value can be any integer from 1 through 31.

`#(config) clock hour` *hour*
Sets the UTC hour to the hour indicated by *hour*. The value can be any integer from 0 through 23.

`#(config) clock minute` *minute*
Sets the UTC minute to the minute indicated by *minute*. The value can be any integer from 0 through 59.

`#(config) clock month` *month*
Sets the UTC month to the month indicated by *month*. The value can be any integer from 1 through 12.

`#(config) clock second` *second*
Sets the UTC second to the second indicated by *second*. The value can be any integer from 0 through 59.

`#(config) clock year` *year*
Sets the UTC year to the year indicated by *year*. The value must take the form *xxxx*.

For More Information

- *Volume 1: Getting Started*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) clock year 2003
 ok
SGOS#(config) clock month 4
 ok
SGOS#(config) clock day 1
 ok
SGOS#(config) clock hour 0
 ok
SGOS#(config) clock minute 30
 ok
SGOS#(config) clock second 59
 ok
```

#(config) console-services

Synopsis

The SG appliance provides console services to communicate:

- HTTP (Not enabled by default)
- HTTPS
- SSH
- Telnet (Not created by default; a Telnet proxy service is created by default on port 23.)

Syntax

```
#(config) console-services
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config console-services)
```

Subcommands

The options below allow you to manage the console service.

`#(config console-services)` **`create`** {**`http-console`** | **`https-console`** | **`ssh-console`** | **`telnet-console`**} ***`console_name`***
Creates a console service with the service name you choose.

`#(config console-services)` **`delete`** ***`console_name`***
Deletes the specified service name.

`#(config console-services)` **`edit`** ***`console_name`***
Changes the prompt, depending on the console service you choose:

- **`#(config http-console)`** on page 131
- **`#(config https-console)`** on page 132
- **`#(config ssh-console)`** on page 134
- **`#(config telnet-console)`** on page 135

`#(config console-services)` **`exit`**
Leaves console-services submode; returns to the config prompt.

`#(config console-services)` **`view`**
Views all console services.

Note: If you create a console name with spaces, the name must be enclosed in quotes; for example, "My Console1".

#(config http-console)

Synopsis

This console service intercepts HTTP traffic, usually on port 80. This console service is created but not enabled due to security concerns.

Syntax

```
#(config console-services) edit http_console
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config http_console)
```

Subcommands

`#(config http_console)` **`add`** {**`all`** | *`proxy_ip_address`*} *`port`* {**`enable`** | **`disable`**}
Add a listener to the console service. All selects all IP addresses on the proxy; alternatively, you can select a specific proxy's IP address. You must always choose a port. By default the listener is enabled.

`#(config http_console)` **`disable`** {**`all`** | *`proxy_ip_address`*} *`port`*
Disables the specified listener.

`#(config http_console)` **`enable`** {**`all`** | *`proxy_ip_address`*} *`port`*
Enables the specified listener.

`#(config http_console)` **`exit`**
Exits to the (config console-services) prompt.

`#(config http_console)` **`view`**
Views a summary of the console service's configuration.

For More Information

- " console-services" on page 130
- *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) console-services
SGOS#(config console-services) create http-console http_console
SGOS#(config console-services) edit http_console
SGOS#(config http_console) add 10.25.36.47 80
SGOS#(config http_console) enable 10.25.36.47 80
```

#(config https-console)

Synopsis

The HTTPS console intercepts traffic on ports 8082. You can create additional HTTPS consoles if necessary.

Syntax

```
#(config console-services) edit https_console
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config https_console)
```

Subcommands

`#(config https_console)` **`add`** {**`all`** | *`proxy_ip_address`*} *`port`* {**`enable`** | **`disable`**}
Add a listener to the console service. All selects all IP addresses on the proxy; alternatively, you can select a specific proxy's IP address. You must always choose a port. By default the listener is enabled.

`#(config https_console)` **`attribute cipher-suite`** ***`cipher-suites`***
Associates one more cipher suites with the console service. Cipher suites can be any combination of the following:

```
rc4-md5
rc4-sha
des-cbc3-sha
des-cbc3-md5
rc2-cbc-md5
rc4-64-md5
des-cbc-sha
des-cbc-md5
exp1024-rc4-md5
exp1024-rc4-sha
exp1024-rc2-cbc-md5
exp1024-des-cbc-sha
exp-rc4-md5
exp-rc2-cbc-md5
exp-des-cbc-sha
aes128-sha
aes256-sha
```

#(config *https_console)* **`attribute keyring`** *`keyring_ID`*
Specifies the keyring ID you want to use with this console.

`#(config https_console)` **`attribute ssl-versions`** {**`sslv2`** | **`sslv3`** | **`tlsv1`** | **`sslv2v3`** |**`sslv2tlsv1`** | **`sslv3tlsv1`** | **`sslv2v3tlsv1`**}
Selects the SSL versions to use**.**

`#(config https_console)` **`disable`** {**`all`** | *`proxy_ip_address`*} *`port`*
Disables the specified listener.

`#(config https_console)` **`enable`** {**`all`** | *`proxy_ip_address`*} *`port`*
Enables the specified listener.

`#(config https_console)` **`exit`**
Exits to the (config console-services) prompt.

`#(config https_console)` **`view`**
Views a summary of the console service's configuration.

For More Information

- " console-services" on page 130
- *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) console-services
SGOS#(config console-services) create https-console https_console
SGOS#(config console-services) edit https_console
SGOS#(config https_console) add 10.25.36.47 80
SGOS#(config https_console) enable 10.25.36.47 80
SGOS#(config https_console) attribute cipher-suite rc4-md5 des-cbc-sha
aes128-sha
```

Note: For a discussion of available cipher suites, refer to *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*.

#(config ssh-console)

Synopsis

The SSH console service allows to you to securely connect to the Command Line Interface. By default, SSHv2 is enabled and assigned to port 22. You do not need to create a new host key unless you want to change the existing configuration.

Syntax

```
#(config console-services) edit ssh_console
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config ssh_console)
```

Subcommands

`#(config ssh_console) add {all | proxy_ip_address} port {enable | disable}`
Add a listener to the console service. All selects all IP addresses on the proxy; alternatively, you can select a specific proxy's IP address. You must always choose a port. By default the listener is enabled.

`#(config ssh_console) disable {all | proxy_ip_address} port`
Disables the specified listener.

`#(config ssh_console) enable {all | proxy_ip_address} port`
Enables the specified listener

`#(config ssh_console) exit`
Exits to the (config console-services) prompt.

`#(config ssh_console) view`
Views a summary of the console service's configuration.

For More Information

- " console-services" on page 130
- " ssh-console" on page 327

Example

```
SGOS#(config) console-services
SGOS#(config console-services) create ssh-console ssh_console
SGOS#(config console-services) edit ssh_console
SGOS#(config ssh_console) add 10.25.36.47 80
SGOS#(config ssh_console) enable 10.25.36.47 80
```

#(config telnet-console)

Synopsis

This console service provides access to the administrative CLI through Telnet. Due to security concerns, use of this console is not recommended.

A shell Telnet proxy service is created on port 23. If you do decide to create a Telnet console, you must first remove the Telnet proxy service and apply the changes. You can later re-add the Telnet proxy service on a different port.

Syntax

```
#(config console-services) edit telnet_console
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config telnet_console)
```

Subcommands

`#(config telnet_console) add {all | proxy_ip_address} port {enable | disable}`
Add a listener to the console service. All selects all IP addresses on the proxy; alternatively, you can select a specific proxy's IP address. You must always choose a port. By default the listener is enabled.

`#(config telnet_console) disable {all | proxy_ip_address} port`
Disables the specified listener.

`#(config telnet_console) enable {all | proxy_ip_address} port`
Enables the specified listener.

`#(config telnet_console) exit`
Exits to the (config console-services) prompt.

`#(config telnet_console) view`
Views a summary of the console service's configuration.

For More Information

- " console-services" on page 130
- *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) console-services
SGOS#(config console-services) create telnet-console telnet_console
SGOS#(config console-services) edit telnet_console
SGOS#(config telnet_console) add 10.25.36.47 80
SGOS#(config telnet_console) enable 10.25.36.47 80
```

#(config) content

Synopsis

Use this command to manage and manipulate content distribution requests and re-validate requests.

Note: The `content` command options are not compatible with transparent FTP.

Syntax

`#(config) content [subcommands]`

Subcommands

`#(config) content cancel outstanding-requests`
Specifies to cancel all outstanding content distribution requests and re-validate requests.

`#(config) content cancel url` *`url`*
Specifies to cancel outstanding content distribution requests and re-validate requests for the URL identified by *`url`*.

`#(config) content delete regex` *`regex`*
Specifies to delete content based on the regular expression identified by *`regex`*.

`#(config) content delete url` *`url`*}
Specifies to delete content for the URL identified by *`url`*.

`#(config) content distribute` *`url`* `[`*`from_url`*`]`
Specifies that the content associated with *`url`* should be distributed from the origin server.

`#(config) content priority {regex` *`priority_0-7 regex`*
Specifies to add a content deletion policy based on the regular expression identified by *`regex`*.

`#(config) content priority url` *`priority_0-7 url`*
Specifies to add a content deletion policy for the URL identified by *`url`*.

`#(config) content revalidate regex` *`regex`*
Revalidates the content associated with the regular expression identified by *`regex`* with the origin server.

`#(config) content revalidate url` *`url`* `[`*`from_url`*`]`
Revalidates the content associated with the *`url`*.

For More Information

- *Blue Coat Director Configuration and Management Guide*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) content distribute http://www.bluecoat.com
Current time: Mon, 01 Apr 2003 00:34:07 GMT
SGOS#(config) content revalidate url http://www.bluecoat.com
Last load time: Mon, 01 Apr 2003 00:34:07 GMT
SGOS#(config) content distribute http://www.bluecoat.com
Current time: Mon, 01 Apr 2003 00:35:01 GMT
SGOS#(config) content priority url 7 http://www.bluecoat.com
SGOS#(config) content cancel outstanding-requests
SGOS#(config) content delete url http://www.bluecoat.com
```

#(config) content-filter

Synopsis

The SG appliance offers the option of using content filtering to control the type of retrieved content and to filter requests made by clients. The SG appliance supports the following content filtering methods:

- Local database

  This method allows you to create and maintain your own content-filtering list locally, through the SG appliance CLI or Management Console.

- Blue Coat Web Filter (BCWF)

  BCWF is a highly effective content-filtering service that can quickly learn and adapt to the working set of its users. Also, BCWF can use Dynamic Real Time Rating (DRTR) to analyze requested Web pages in real time, blocking new, unrated content on the fly, while providing the database with instant updates that impact all users without service interruption.

- Internet Watch Foundation® (IWF)

  The IWF is a non-profit organization that provides enterprises with a list of known child pornography URLs. The IWF database features a single category called IWF-Restricted, which is detectable and blockable using policy. IWF can be enabled along with other content-filtering services.

- Vendor-based content filtering

  This method allows you to block URLs using vendor-defined categories. For this method, use content-filtering solutions from the following vendors:

  - i-FILTER
  - InterSafe™
  - Optenet
  - Proventia™
  - SmartFilter™
  - SurfControl™
  - Websense® (both locally on the SG appliance and remotely on a separate Websense Enterprise Server)
  - WebWasher®

  You can also combine this type of content filtering with the SG appliance policies, which use the Blue Coat Policy Language.

- Denying access to URLs through policy

  This method allows you to block by URL, including filtering by scheme, domain, or individual host or IP address. For this method, you define SG appliance policies, which use the Blue Coat Policy Language.

Syntax

```
#(config) content-filter
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config content-filter)
```

Subcommands

`#(config content-filter)` **`bluecoat`**
Enters configuration mode for Blue Coat Web Filter. See **`#(config bluecoat)`** on page 140.

`#(config content-filter)` **`categories`**
Shows available categories.

`#(config content-filter)` **`exit`**
Exits configure content filter mode and returns to configure mode.

`#(config content-filter)` **`i-filter`**
Enters configuration mode for i-FILTER. See **`#(config i-filter)`** on page 142.

`#(config content-filter)` **`intersafe`**
Enters configuration mode for InterSafe. See **`#(config intersafe)`** on page 144.

#(config content-filter) **`iwf`**
Enters configuration mode for IWF. See **`#(config iwf)`** on page 146.

`#(config content-filter)` **`local`**—changes the prompt (see **`#(config local) on page 148`**)
Enters configuration mode for Local database.

`#(config content-filter)` **`no review-message`**
Specifies that vendor categorization review be turned off.

`#(config content-filter)` **`optenet`**
Enters configuration mode for Optenet. See **`#(config optenet)`** on page 150.

`#(config content-filter)` **`proventia`**
Enters configuration mode for Proventia. See **`#(config proventia)`** on page 152.

`#(config content-filter)` **`provider bluecoat`** {**`disable`** | **`enable`** | **`lookup-mode`** {**`always`** | **`uncategorized`**}}
Enables or disables `Blue Coat` Web Filter database. The **`lookup-mode`** option specifies whether every URL should be categorized by the downloaded filter.

`#(config content-filter)` **`provider local`** {**`disable`** | **`enable`** | **`lookup-mode`** {**`always`** | **`uncategorized`**}}
Enables or disables a local user database. The **`lookup-mode`** option specifies whether every URL should be categorized by the downloaded filter.

#(config content-filter) **`provider iwf`** {**`disable`** | **`enable`** | **`lookup-mode`** {**`always`** | **`uncategorized`**}}
Enables or disables IWF filtering. The **`lookup-mode`** option specifies whether every URL should be categorized by the downloaded filter.

`#(config content-filter)` **`provider 3rd-party i-filter`**
Selects i-FILTER content filtering.

`#(config content-filter)` **`provider 3rd-party intersafe`**
Selects InterSafe content filtering.

`#(config content-filter)` **`provider 3rd-party none`**
Specifies that a third-party vendor not be used for content filtering.

`#(config content-filter)` **`provider 3rd-party optenet`**
Selects Optenet content filtering.

`#(config content-filter)` **`provider 3rd-party proventia`**
Selects Proventia Web Filter content filtering.

`#(config content-filter)` **`provider 3rd-party smartfilter`**
Selects SmartFilter content filtering.

`#(config content-filter)` **`provider 3rd-party surfcontrol`**
Selects SurfControl content filtering.

`#(config content-filter)` **`provider 3rd-party websense`**
Selects Websense content filtering.

`#(config content-filter)` **`provider 3rd-party webwasher`**
Selects Webwasher URL Filter content filtering.

`#(config content-filter)` **`provider`** {**`local`** | **`bluecoat`** | **`iwf`** | **`3rd-party`**} **`lookup-mode`** {**`always`** | **`uncategorized`**}
Selects Lookup Mode. Default is **Always**.

`#(config content-filter)` **`review-message`**
Used for categorization review for certain Content Filtering vendors.The review-message setting enables two substitutions that can be used in exceptions pages to allow users to review or dispute content categorization results.

`#(config content-filter)` **`smartfilter`**
Enters configuration mode for SmartFilter. See **`#(config smartfilter)`** on page 154.

`#(config content-filter)` **`surfcontrol`**
Enters configuration mode for SurfControl. See **`#(config surfcontrol)`** on page 156.

`#(config content-filter)` **`test-url`** *`url`*
Displays categories for a URL assigned by the current configuration.

`#(config content-filter)` **`websense`**
Enters configuration mode for Websense. See **`#(config websense)`** on page 158.

`#(config content-filter)` **`webwasher`**
Enters configuration mode for WebWasher. See **`#(config webwasher)`** on page 160

`#(config content-filter)` **`view`**
Shows the current settings for the local database (if it is in use) and the selected provider (if one is selected).

For More Information

- *Volume 7: Managing Content*
- *Volume 10: Content Policy Language Guide*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) content-filter
SGOS#(config content-filter) provider 3rd-party proventia
loading database....
 ok
SGOS#(config content-filter) exit
SGOS#(config)
```

#(config bluecoat)

Synopsis

Use this command to configure Blue Coat Web Filter content filtering.

Syntax

```
#(config) content-filter
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config content-filter) bluecoat
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config bluecoat)
```

Subcommands

`#(config bluecoat)` **`download all-day`**
Checks for database updates all day.

`#(config bluecoat)` **`download auto`**
Enables automatic database downloads.

`#(config bluecoat)` **`download between-hours`** *`start stop`*

Sets the interval for automatic database update checks.

`#(config bluecoat)` **`download encrypted-password`** *`encrypted_password`*
Specifies the encrypted password for the database download server.

`#(config bluecoat)` **`download get-now`**
Initiates an immediate database download.

`#(config bluecoat)` **`download password`** *`password`*
Specifies the password for the database download server.

`#(config bluecoat)` **`download url`** {**`default`** | *`url`*}
Specifies using either the default URL or a specific URL for the database download server.

`#(config bluecoat)` **`download username`** *`username`*
Specifies the username for the database download server.

`#(config bluecoat)` **`exit`**
Exits configure bluecoat mode and returns to configure content-filter mode.

`#(config bluecoat)` **`no download auto`**
Disables automatic download.

`#(config bluecoat)` **`no download day-of-week`** {**`friday`** | **`monday`** | **`saturday`** | **`sunday`** | **`thursday`** | **`tuesday`** | **`wednesday`**}
Clears day(s) of the week for automatic download.

`#(config bluecoat)` **`no download encrypted-password`**
Clears the encrypted password for the database download server.

`#(config bluecoat)` **`no download password`**
Clears the password for the database download server.

`#(config bluecoat)` **`no download url`**
Clears the URL for the database download server.

`#(config bluecoat)` **`no download username`**
Clears the username for the database download server.

`#(config bluecoat)` **`service`** {**`disable`** | **`enable`**}
Enables or disables dynamic categorization.

`#(config bluecoat)` **`service mode`** {**`background`** | **`realtime`** | **`none`**}
Configures dynamic categorization to run in the background, run in real time, or to not run.

`#(config bluecoat)` **`view`**
Shows the current Blue Coat settings.

For More Information

- *Volume 7: Managing Content*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) content-filter
SGOS#(config content-filter) bluecoat
SGOS#(config bluecoat) service mode background
 ok
SGOS#(config bluecoat) exit
SGOS#(config content-filter) exit
SGOS#(config)
```

#(config i-filter)

Synopsis

Use this command to configure i-FILTER content filtering

Syntax

```
#(config) content-filter
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config content-filter) i-filter
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config i-filter)
```

Subcommands

`#(config i-filter)` **`download all-day`**
Checks for database updates all day.

`#(config i-filter)` **`download auto`**
Enables automatic database downloads.

`#(config i-filter)` **`download between-hours`** *`start stop`*

Sets the interval for automatic database update checks.

`#(config i-filter)` **`download encrypted-password`** *`encrypted_password`*
Specifies the encrypted password for the database download server.

`#(config i-filter)` **`download get-now`**
Initiates an immediate database download.

`#(config i-filter)` **`download password`** *`password`*
Specifies the password for the database download server.

`#(config i-filter)` **`download url`** {**`default`** | *`url`*}
Specifies using either the default URL or a specific URL for the database download server.

`#(config i-filter)` **`download username`** *`username`*
Specifies the username for the database download server.

`#(config i-filter)` **`exit`**
Exits configure i-filter mode and returns to configure content-filter mode.

`#(config i-filter)` **`no download auto`**
Disables automatic download.

`#(config i-filter)` **`no download encrypted-password`**
Clears the encrypted password for the database download server.

`#(config i-filter)` **`no download password`**
Clears the password for the database download server.

`#(config i-filter)` **`no download url`**
Clears the URL for the database download server.

`#(config i-filter)` **`no download username`**
Clears the username for the database download server.

`#(config i-filter)` **`view`**
Shows the current InterSafe settings.

For More Information

- *Volume 7: Managing Content*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) content-filter
SGOS#(config content-filter) i-filter
SGOS#(config i-filter) no download day-of-week mon
 ok
SGOS#(config i-filter) no download day-of-week wed
 ok
SGOS#(config i-filter) exit
SGOS#(config content-filter) exit
SGOS#(config)
```

#(config intersafe)

Synopsis

Use this command to configure InterSafe content filtering.

Syntax

```
#(config) content-filter
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config content-filter) intersafe
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config intersafe)
```

Subcommands

`#(config intersafe)` **`download all-day`**
Checks for database updates all day.

`#(config intersafe)` **`download auto`**
Enables automatic database downloads.

`#(config intersafe)` **`download between-hours`** *`start stop`*

Sets the interval for automatic database update checks.

`#(config intersafe)` **`download encrypted-password`** *`encrypted_password`*
Specifies the encrypted password for the database download server.

`#(config intersafe)` **`download get-now`**
Initiates an immediate database download.

`#(config intersafe)` **`download password`** *`password`*
Specifies the password for the database download server.

`#(config intersafe)` **`download url`** {**`default`** | *`url`*}
Specifies using either the default URL or a specific URL for the database download server.

`#(config intersafe)` **`download username`** *`username`*
Specifies the username for the database download server.

`#(config intersafe)` **`exit`**
Exits configure Intersafe mode and returns to configure content-filter mode.

`#(config intersafe)` **`no download auto`**
Disables automatic download.

`#(config intersafe)` **`no download encrypted-password`**
Clears the encrypted password for the database download server.

`#(config intersafe)` **`no download password`**
Clears the password for the database download server.

`#(config intersafe)` **`no download url`**
Clears the URL for the database download server.

`#(config intersafe)` **`no download username`**
Clears the username for the database download server.

`#(config intersafe)` **`view`**
Shows the current InterSafe settings.

For More Information

- *Volume 7: Managing Content*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) content-filter
SGOS#(config content-filter) intersafe
SGOS#(config intersafe) no download day-of-week mon
 ok
SGOS#(config intersafe) no download day-of-week wed
 ok
SGOS#(config intersafe) exit
SGOS#(config content-filter) exit
SGOS#(config)
```

#(config iwf)

Synopsis

Use this command to configure Internet Watch Foundation content filtering.

Syntax

```
#(config) content-filter
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config content-filter) iwf
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config iwf)
```

Subcommands

`#(config iwf)` **`download all-day`**
Checks for database updates all day.

`#(config iwf)` **`download auto`**
Enables automatic database downloads.

`#(config iwf)` **`download between-hours`** *`start stop`*

Sets the interval for automatic database update checks.

`#(config iwf)` **`download encrypted-password`** *`encrypted_password`*
Specifies the encrypted password for the database download server.

`#(config iwf)` **`download get-now`**
Initiates an immediate database download.

`#(config iwf)` **`download password`** *`password`*
(Optional) Specifies the password for the database download server.

`#(config iwf)` **`download url`** {**`default`** | *`url`*}
Specifies using either the default URL or a specific URL for the database download server.

`#(config iwf)` **`download username`** *`username`*
Specifies the username for the database download server.

`#(config iwf)` **`exit`**
Exits configure Intersafe mode and returns to `#(configure content-filter)` mode.

`#(config iwf)` **`no download auto`**
Disables automatic download.

`#(config iwf)` **`no download encrypted-password`**
Clears the encrypted password for the database download server.

`#(config iwf)` **`no download password`**
Clears the password for the database download server.

`#(config iwf)` **`no download url`**
Clears the URL for the database download server.

`#(config iwf)` **`no download username`**
Clears the username for the database download server.

`#(config iwf)` **`view`**
Shows the current InterSafe settings.

Example

```
SGOS#(config content-filter) local
SGOS#(config iwf) download day-of-week all
 ok
SGOS#(config iwf) exit
SGOS#(config content-filter) exit
SGOS#(config)
```

#(config local)

Synopsis

Use this command to configure local content filtering.

Syntax

```
#(config) content-filter
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config content-filter) local
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config local)
```

Subcommands

`#(config local)` **`clear`**
Clears the local database from the system.

`#(config local)` **`download all-day`**
Checks for database updates all day.

`#(config local)` **`download auto`**
Enables automatic database downloads.

`#(config local)` **`download between-hours`** *`start stop`*

Sets the interval for automatic database update checks.

`#(config local)` **`download encrypted-password`** *`encrypted_password`*
Specifies the encrypted password for the database download server.

`#(config local)` **`download get-now`**
Initiates an immediate database download.

`#(config local)` **`download password`** *`password`*
Specifies the password for the database download server.

`#(config local)` **`download url`** {**`default`** | *`url`*}
Specifies using either the default URL or a specific URL for the database download server.

`#(config local)` **`download username`** *`username`*
Specifies the username for the database download server.

`#(config local)` **`exit`**
Exits configure local database mode and returns to configure content-filter mode.

`#(config local)` **`no download auto`**
Disables automatic download.

`#(config local)` **`no download encrypted-password`**
Clears the encrypted password for the database download server.

`#(config local)` **`no download password`**
Clears the password for the database download server.

`#(config local)` **`no download url`**
Clears the URL for the database download server.

`#(config local)` **`no download username`**
Clears the username for the database download server.

`#(config local) source`
Shows the database source file.

`#(config local) view`
Shows the current local database settings.

For More Information

- *Volume 7: Managing Content*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) content-filter
SGOS#(config content-filter) local
SGOS#(config local) download day-of-week all
 ok
SGOS#(config local) exit
SGOS#(config content-filter) exit
SGOS#(config)
```

#(config optenet)

Synopsis

Use this command to configure Optenet content filtering.

Syntax

```
#(config) content-filter
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config content-filter) optenet
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config optenet)
```

Subcommands

`#(config optenet)` **`download all-day`**
Checks for database updates all day.

`#(config optenet)` **`download auto`**
Enables automatic database downloads.

`#(config optenet)` **`download between-hours`** *`start stop`*

Sets the interval for automatic database update checks.

`#(config optenet)` **`download encrypted-password`** *`encrypted_password`*
Specifies the encrypted password for the database download server.

`#(config optenet)` **`download password`** *`password`*
Specifies the password for the database download server.

`#(config optenet)` **`download url`** {**`default`** | *`url`*}
Specifies using either the default URL or a specific URL for the database download server.

`#(config optenet)` **`download username`** *`username`*
Specifies the username for the database download server.

`#(config optenet)` **`exit`**
Exits configure optenet mode and returns to configure content-filter mode.

`#(config optenet)` **`no download auto`**
Disables automatic download.

`#(config optenet)` **`no download encrypted-password`**
Clears the encrypted password for the database download server.

`#(config optenet)` **`no download password`**
Clears the password for the database download server.

`#(config optenet)` **`no download url`**
Clears the URL for the database download server.

`#(config optenet)` **`no download username`**
Clears the username for the database download server.

`#(config optenet)` **`view`**
Shows the current optenet Web Filter settings.

For More Information

- *Volume 7: Managing Content*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) content-filter
SGOS#(config content-filter) optenet
SGOS#(config optenet) download time-of-day 20
 ok
SGOS#(config optenet) exit
SGOS#(config content-filter) exit
SGOS#(config)
```

#(config proventia)

Synopsis

Use this command to configure Proventia Web Filter content filtering.

Syntax

```
#(config) content-filter
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config content-filter) proventia
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config proventia)
```

Subcommands

`#(config proventia)` **`download all-day`**
Checks for database updates all day.

`#(config proventia)` **`download auto`**
Enables automatic database downloads.

`#(config proventia)` **`download between-hours`** *`start stop`*

Sets the interval for automatic database update checks.

`#(config proventia)` **`download encrypted-password`** *`encrypted_password`*
Specifies the encrypted password for the database download server.

`#(config proventia)` **`download get-now`**
Initiates an immediate database download.

`#(config proventia)` **`download password`** *`password`*
Specifies the password for the database download server.

`#(config proventia)` **`download url`** {**`default`** | *`url`*}
Specifies using either the default URL or a specific URL for the database download server.

`#(config proventia)` **`download username`** *`username`*
Specifies the username for the database download server.

`#(config proventia)` **`exit`**
Exits configure proventia mode and returns to configure content-filter mode.

`#(config proventia)` **`no download auto`**
Disables automatic download.

`#(config proventia)` **`no download encrypted-password`**
Clears the encrypted password for the database download server.

`#(config proventia)` **`no download password`**
Clears the password for the database download server.

`#(config proventia)` **`no download url`**
Clears the URL for the database download server.

`#(config proventia)` **`no download username`**
Clears the username for the database download server.

`#(config proventia)` **`view`**
Shows the current proventia Web Filter settings.

For More Information

- *Volume 7: Managing Content*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) content-filter
SGOS#(config content-filter) proventia
SGOS#(config proventia) download time-of-day 20
 ok
SGOS#(config proventia) exit
SGOS#(config content-filter) exit
SGOS#(config)
```

#(config smartfilter)

Synopsis

Use this command to configure SmartFilter filters that control the type of content retrieved by the SG appliance and filter requests made by clients.

Syntax

```
#(config) content-filter
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config content-filter) smartfilter
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config smartfilter)
```

Subcommands

`#(config smartfilter)` **`allow-rdns`**
Allow reverse DNS for lookups.

`#(config smartfilter)` **`download all-day`**
Checks for database updates all day.

`#(config smartfilter)` **`download auto`**
Enables automatic database downloads.

`#(config smartfilter)` **`download between-hours`** *`start stop`*

Sets the interval for automatic database update checks.

`#(config smartfilter)` **`download get-now`**
Initiates immediate database download. If a full download is unnecessary, an incremental download is initiated.

`#(config smartfilter)` **`download license`** *`license_key`*
The customer serial number assigned you by SmartFilter.

`#(config smartfilter)` **`download server`** *`IP_address_or_hostname`*
Enter the IP address or hostname of the server you should use for downloads if requested.

`#(config smartfilter)` **`exit`**
Exits configure smartfilter mode and returns to configure content-filter mode.

`#(config smartfilter)` **`no allow-rdns`**
Disallows reverse DNS for lookups.

`#(config smartfilter)` **`no download`** {**`auto`** | **`encrypted-password`** | **`password`** | **`url`** | **`username`**}
Negates download commands.

`#(config smartfilter)` **`no use-search-keywords`**
Disables the ability to categorize search engines based on keywords in the URL query.

`#(config smartfilter)` **`use-search-keywords`**
Allows you to categorize search engines based on keywords in the URL query.

`#(config smartfilter)` **`view`**
Shows the current SmartFilter settings.

For More Information

- *Volume 7: Managing Content*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) content-filter
SGOS#(config content-filter) smartfilter
SGOS#(config smartfilter) allow-rdns
 ok
SGOS#(config smartfilter) exit
SGOS#(config content-filter) exit
SGOS#(config)
```

#(config surfcontrol)

Synopsis

Use this command to configure SurfControl filters that control the type of content retrieved by the SG appliance and filter requests made by clients.

Syntax

#(config) **content-filter**

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config content-filter) surfcontrol
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config surfcontrol)
```

Subcommands

`#(config surfcontrol)` **download all-day**
Checks for database updates all day.

`#(config surfcontrol)` **download auto**
Enables automatic database downloads.

`#(config surfcontrol)` **download between-hours** *start stop*

Sets the interval for automatic database update checks.

`#(config surfcontrol)` **encrypted-password** *encrypted-password*
Sets the download encrypted password. The username/password is assigned by Blue Coat.

`#(config surfcontrol)` **download get-now**
Initiates immediate database download. If a full download is unnecessary, an incremental download is initiated.

`#(config surfcontrol)` **download license** *license_key*
The customer serial number assigned you by SurfControl.

`#(config surfcontrol)` **download server** *IP_address_or_hostname*
Enter the IP address or hostname of the server you should use for downloads if requested.

`#(config surfcontrol)` **download url** {**default** | *url*}
Specifies using either the default URL or a specific URL for the database download server.

`#(config surfcontrol)` **download username** *username*
Sets the download username. The username/password is assigned by Blue Coat.

`#(config surfcontrol)` **exit**
Exits configure surfcontrol mode and returns to configure content-filter mode

`#(config surfcontrol)` **no download** {**auto** | **encrypted-password**| **username** | **password** | **url**}
Negates download commands.

`#(config surfcontrol)` **view**
Shows the current SurfControl settings.

For More Information

- *Volume 7: Managing Content*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) content-filter
SGOS#(config content-filter) surfcontrol
SGOS#(config surfcontrol) no download url
 ok
SGOS#(config surfcontrol) exit
SGOS#(config content-filter) exit
SGOS#(config)
```

#(config websense)

Synopsis

Use this command to configure Websense filters that control the type of content retrieved by the SG appliance and filter requests made by clients.

Syntax

```
#(config) content-filter
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config content-filter) websense
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config websense)
```

Subcommands

`#(config websense)` **`always-apply-regexes`**
Forces an additional regular expression lookup for each URL to be categorized. Normally, regular expression lookups are only performed when no category is found in the Websense database. This option causes them to be performed always, even for categorized URLs. This can reduce lookup performance, but can allow certain sites (such as translation, search engine, and link-cache sites) to be categorized more accurately.

`#(config websense)` **`download all-day`**
Checks for database updates all day.

`#(config websense)` **`download auto`**
Enables automatic database downloads.

`#(config websense)` **`download between-hours`** *`start stop`*

Sets the interval for automatic database update checks.

`#(config websense)` **`download email-contact`** *`email_address`*
Specifies an e-mail address that is sent to Websense when downloading the database.

`#(config websense)` **`download get-now`**
Initiates immediate database download. If a full download is unnecessary, an incremental download is initiated.

`#(config websense)` **`download license`** *`license_key`*
Specifies the license key for the database download server.

`#(config websense)` **`download server`** {*`ip_address`* | *`hostname`*}
Specifies the server location of the database.

`#(config websense)` **`exit`**
Exits configure websense mode and returns to configure content-filter mode.

`#(config websense)` **`integration-service disable`**
Disables the integration service.

`#(config websense)` **`integration-service enable`**
Enables the integration service.

`#(config websense)` **`integration-service host (`***`hostname or IP_address`***`)`**
Set the integration service hostname or IP address. The IP address must match the IP address of the Websense Log Server.

`#(config websense)` **`integration-service port`** {*`integer between 0 and 65535`*}
Configure the integration service port. Accepted values are between 0 and 65535.

`#(config websense)` **`log-forwarded-client-address`**
Allows you to log the X-Forwarded-For header (if present and a parseable IP address) in the Websense Reporter log.

`#(config websense)` **`no always-apply-regexes`**
Specifies to not apply regular expression filters to categorized URLs.

`#(config websense)` **`no download`** {**`auto`** | **`email-contact`** | **`license`** | **`server`**}
Clears the download parameters.

`#(config websense)` **`no integration-service`** {**`host`** | **`port`**}
Clears the integration-service host or port.

`#(config websense)` **`no log-forwarded-client-address`**
Disables logging the X-Forwarded-For header in the Websense Reporter log.

`#(config websense)` **`view`**
Shows the current Websense settings.

For More Information

- *Volume 7: Managing Content*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) content-filter
SGOS#(config content-filter) websense
SGOS#(config websense) no always-apply-regexes
 ok
SGOS#(config websense) exit
SGOS#(config content-filter) exit
SGOS#(config)
```

#(config webwasher)

Synopsis

Use this command to configure Webwasher URL Filter content filtering.

Syntax

```
#(config) content-filter
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config content-filter) webwasher
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config webwasher)
```

Subcommands

`#(config webwasher)` **`download all-day`**
Checks for database updates all day.

`#(config webwasher)` **`download auto`**
Enables automatic database downloads.

`#(config webwasher)` **`download between-hours`** *`start stop`*

Sets the interval for automatic database update checks.

`#(config webwasher)` **`download encrypted-password`** *`encrypted_password`*
Specifies the encrypted password for the database download server.

`#(config webwasher)` **`download get-now`**
Initiates an immediate database download. If a full download is unnecessary, an incremental download is initiated.

`#(config webwasher)` **`download password`** *`password`*
Specifies the password for the database download server.

`#(config webwasher)` **`download url`** {**`default`** | *`url`*}
Specifies using either the default URL or a specific URL for the database download server.

`#(config webwasher)` **`download username`** *`username`*
Specifies the username for the database download server.

`#(config webwasher)` **`exit`**
Exits configure webwasher mode and returns to configure content-filter mode.

`#(config webwasher)` **`no download auto`**
Disables automatic download.

`#(config webwasher)` **`no download encrypted-password`**
Clears the encrypted password for the database download server.

`#(config webwasher)` **`no download password`**
Clears the password for the database download server.

`#(config webwasher)` **`no download url`**
Clears the URL for the database download server.

`#(config webwasher)` **`no download username`**
Clears the username for the database download server.

`#(config webwasher)` **`view`**
Shows the current webwasher Web Filter settings.

For More Information

- *Volume 7: Managing Content*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) content-filter
SGOS#(config content-filter) webwasher
SGOS#(config webwasher) download time-of-day 20
 ok
SGOS#(config webwasher) exit
SGOS#(config content-filter) exit
SGOS#(config)
```

#(config) connection-forwarding

Synopsis

This command enables you to configure the TCP Connection Forwarding aspect of ADN transparent tunnel load balancing and asymmetric routing.

Syntax

```
#(config) connection-forwarding
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config connection-forwarding)
```

Subcommands

`SGOS# (config connection forwarding) add` *ip_address*
Add this SG appliance to a connection forwarding peer group.

`SGOS# (config connection forwarding) port` *number*
Specify the port used by all peers in the peer group to communicate connection information (each peer in the group *must* use the same port number). The default is 3030.

`SGOS# (config connection forwarding) [enable | disable]`
Enables or disables connection forwarding on this SG appliance.

`SGOS# (config connection forwarding) clear`
Clear the list of forwarding peers from this SG appliance.

`SGOS# (config connection forwarding) exit`
Exits `(config connection forwarding)` mode and returns to `#(config)` mode.

`SGOS# (config connection forwarding) view`
View the TCP connection forwarding information.

For More Information

Volume 5: Advanced Networking

Example

```
SGOS#(config) connection-forwarding
SGOS#(connection-forwarding) add 10.9.59.100
 ok
SGOS#(config connection-forwarding) port 3030
 ok
SGOS#(config connection-forwarding) enable
 ok
```

#(config) diagnostics

Synopsis

This command enables you to configure the remote diagnostic feature Heartbeat.

Syntax

```
#(config) diagnostics
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config diagnostics)
```

Subcommands

`#(config diagnostics)` **`cpu-monitor`** {**`disable`** | **`enable`**}
Enables or disables the CPU monitor (the CPU monitor is disabled by default).

`#(config diagnostics)` **`cpu-monitor interval`** *`seconds`*
Sets the periodic interval of the CPU monitor from 1 to 59 seconds (the default setting is 5 seconds).

`#(config diagnostics)` **`exit`**
Exits `#(config diagnostics)` mode and returns to `#(config)` mode.

`#(config diagnostics)` **`heartbeat`** {**`disable`** | **`enable`**}
Enables or disables the SG appliance Heartbeat features.

`#(config diagnostics)` **`monitor`** {**`disable`** | **`enable`**}
Enables or disables the Blue Coat monitoring feature.

`#(config diagnostics)` **`send-heartbeat`**
Triggers a heartbeat report.

`#(config diagnostics)` **`service-info`**
Changes the prompt (see **`#(config service-info) on page 165`**)

`#(config diagnostics)` **`snapshot (create | delete}`** *`snapshot_name`*
Creates or deletes a snapshot job.

`#(config diagnostics)` **`edit`** *`snapshot_name`*
Changes the prompt to **`#(config snapshot snapshot_name) on page 167`**)

`#(config diagnostics)` **`view configuration`**
Displays diagnostics settings for Heartbeats, CPU monitor, automatic service-info, and snapshots.

`#(config diagnostics)` **`view cpu-monitor`**
Displays the CPU Monitor results.

`#(config diagnostics)` **`view service-info`**
Displays service-info settings and progress.

`#(config diagnostics)` **`view snapshot`** *`snapshot_name`*
Displays the snapshot settings (target, status, interval, to keep, to take, and next snapshot) for the snapshot name specified.

For More Information

- *Volume 10: Managing the Blue Coat SG Appliance*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) diagnostics
SGOS#(config diagnostics) heartbeat enable
 ok
SGOS#(config diagnostics) exit
SGOS#(config)
```

#(config service-info)

Synopsis

This command allows you to send service information to Blue Coat.

Syntax

```
#(config) diagnostics
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config diagnostics) service-info
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config service-info)
```

Subcommands

`#(diagnostics service-info)` **`auto`** {**`disable`** | **`enable`**}
Disables or enables the automatic service information feature.

`#(diagnostics service-info)` **`auto no sr-number`**
Clears the service-request number for the automatic service information feature.

`#(diagnostics service-info)` **`auto sr-number`** ***`sr_number`***
Sets the service-request number for the automatic service information feature.

`#(diagnostics service-info)` **`bandwidth-class`** *`bw_class_name`*
Sets a bandwidth class used to manage the bandwidth of service-information transfers.

In order to do bandwidth-manage service-information transfers, bandwidth management must be enabled. You must also create a bandwidth class for service-information transfers (in bandwidth-management mode) before you can select it here.

`#(diagnostics service-info)` **`cancel all`**
Cancel all service information being sent to Blue Coat.

`#(diagnostics service-info)` **`cancel`** *`one_or_more_from_view_status`*
Cancel certain service information being sent to Blue Coat.

`#(diagnostics service-info)` **`exit`**
Exits `#(config diagnostics service-info)` mode and returns to `#(config diagnostics)` mode.

`#(diagnostics service-info)` **`no bandwidth-class`**
Disables bandwidth-management for service-information transfers

`#(diagnostics service-info)` **`send`** *`sr_number one_or_more_commands_from_view_available`*
Sends a specific service request number along with a specific command or commands (chosen from the list provided by the `view available` command) to Blue Coat.

`#(diagnostics service-info)` **`view available`**
Shows list of service information than can be sent to Blue Coat.

`#(diagnostics service-info)` **`view status`**
Shows transfer status of service information to Blue Coat.

For More Information

- **#(config) bandwidth-management** on page 117
- *Volume 10: Managing the Blue Coat SG Appliance*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) diagnostics
SGOS#(config diagnostics) service-info
SGOS#(diagnostics service-info) view available
Service information that can be sent to Blue Coat

Name                                    Approx Size (bytes)
Event_log                               188,416
System_information                      Unknown
Snapshot_sysinfo                        Unknown
Snapshot_sysinfo_stats                  Unknown
SGOS#(diagnostics service-info) send 1-4974446 event_log system_information
snapshot_sysinfo
Sending the following reports
Event_log
System_information
Snapshot_sysinfo
SGOS#(diagnostics service-info) view status
Name                                      Transferred
Event_log                                 Transferred successfully
Snapshot_sysinfo                          Transferred successfully
Event_log                                 Transferred successfully
System_information                        Transferred successfully
SGOS#(diagnostics service-info) exit
SGOS#(config diagnostics) exit
SGOS#(config)
```

#(config snapshot *snapshot_name)*

Synopsis

This command allows you to edit a snapshot job.

Syntax

```
#(config) diagnostics
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config diagnostics) snapshot edit snapshot_name
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config snapshot snapshot_name)
```

Subcommands

`#(config snapshot snapshot_name) clear-reports`
Clears all stored snapshots reports.

`#(config snapshot snapshot_name) {disable | enable}`
Disables or enables this snapshot job.

`#(config snapshot snapshot_name) exit`
Exits `#(config diagnostics snapshot_name)` mode and returns to `#(config diagnostics service-info)` mode.

`#(config snapshot snapshot_name) interval minutes`
Specifies the interval between snapshots reports in minutes.

`#(config snapshot snapshot_name) keep number_to_keep (from 1 - 100)`
Specifies the number of snapshot reports to keep.

`#(config snapshot snapshot_name) take {infinite | number_to_take}`
Specifies the number of snapshot reports to take.

`#(config snapshot snapshot_name) target object_to_fetch`
Specifies the object to snapshot.

`#(config snapshot snapshot_name) view`
Displays snapshot status and configuration.

For More Information

- *Volume 10: Managing the Blue Coat SG Appliance*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) diagnostics
SGOS#(config diagnostics) snapshot testshot
SGOS#(diagnostics snapshot testshot) enable
 ok
SGOS#(diagnostics service-info) interval 1440
 ok
SGOS#(diagnostics snapshot testshot) exit
SGOS#(config diagnostics) exit
SGOS#(config)
```

#(config) dns

Synopsis

The `dns` command enables you to modify the DNS settings for the SG appliance. Note that the alternate DNS servers are only checked if the servers in the standard DNS list return: "Name not found."

Syntax

```
#(config) dns [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

`#(config)` **`dns alternate`** *`ip_address`*
Adds the new alternate domain name server indicated by *`ip_address`* to the alternate DNS server list.

`#(config)` **`dns clear alternate`**
Sets all entries in the alternate DNS server list to null.

`#(config)` **`dns clear imputing`**
Sets all entries in the name imputing list to null.

`#(config)` **`dns client-affinity`** {**`disable`** | **`enable`**}
Enable or disable client-affinity.
When enabled, requests from the same client resolve the hostname in the same order. www.google.com resolves to 66.102.7.99, 66.102.7.147, and 66.102.7.104. If client-affinity is enabled and the SG appliance receives a request (http, streaming or other proxy request) for www.google.com, it uses the client's IP address to determine the order of the resolved addresses. If client-affinity is disabled, the order of the resolved addresses changed each time the SG appliance receives a request.

`#(config)` **`dns clear server`**
Sets all entries in the primary DNS server list to null.

`#(config)` **`dns imputing`** ***`name`***
Identifies the file indicated by *`name`* as the name imputing list.

`#(config)` **`dns negative-cache-ttl-override`** *`seconds`*
Set the DNS negative cache time-to-live value for *`seconds`*.
A DNS request to an unknown domain name (klauwjdasd.bluecaot.com) is cached by the SG appliance. This type of caching is called a negative cache because it does not resolve to an actual IP address. The TTL value for a negative cache entry can be overwritten by this command.

`#(config)` **`dns no alternate`** *`ip_address`*
Removes the alternate DNS server identified by *`ip_address`* from the alternate DNS server list.

`#(config)` **`dns no imputing`** *`imputed_name`*
Removes the imputed name identified by *`imputed_name`* from the name imputing list.

`#(config)` **`dns no negative-cache-ttl-override`**
Do not override the negative cache time-to-live value.

`#(config)` **`dns no server`** *`ip_address`*
Removes the primary DNS server identified by *`ip_address`* from the primary DNS server list.

`#(config)` **`dns server`** *`ip_address`*
Adds the new primary domain name server indicated by *`ip_address`* to the primary DNS server list.

For More Information

- *Volume 1: Getting Started*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) dns clear server
 ok
SGOS#(config) dns server 10.253.220.249
 ok
SGOS#(config) dns clear alternate
 ok
SGOS#(config) dns alternate 216.52.23.101
 ok
```

#(config) event-log

Synopsis

You can configure the SG appliance to log system events as they occur. Event logging allows you to specify the types of system events logged, the size of the event log, and to configure Syslog monitoring. The SG appliance can also notify you by e-mail if an event is logged.

Syntax

```
#(config) event-log
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config event-log)
```

Subcommands

`#(config event-log)` **`exit`**
Exits `#(config event-log)` mode and returns to `#(config)` mode.

`#(config event-log)` **`level configuration`**
Writes severe and configuration change error messages to the event log.

`#(config event-log)` **`level informational`**
Writes severe, configuration change, policy event, and information error messages to the event log.

`#(config event-log)` **`level policy`**
Writes severe, configuration change, and policy event error messages to the event log.

`#(config event-log)` **`level severe`**
Writes only severe error messages to the event log.

`#(config event-log)` **`level verbose`**
Writes all error messages to the event log.

`#(config event-log)` **`log-size`** *megabytes*
Specifies the maximum size of the event log in megabytes.

`#(config event-log)` **`mail add`** *email_address*
Specifies an e-mail recipient for the event log output.

`#(config event-log)` **`mail clear`**
Removes all e-mail recipients from the event log e-mail output distribution list.

`#(config event-log)` **`mail no smtp-gateway`**
Clears the SMTP gateway used for notifications.

`#(config event-log)` **`mail remove`** *email_address*
Removes the e-mail recipient indicated by *email_address* from the event log e-mail output distribution list.

`#(config event-log)` **`mail smtp-gateway`** {*domain_name* | *ip_address*}
Specifies the SMTP gateway to use for event log e-mail output notifications.

`#(config event-log)` **`syslog`** {**`disable`** | **`enable`**}
Disables the collection of system log messages.

`#(config event-log)` **`syslog facility`** {**`auth`** | **`daemon`** | **`kernel`** | **`local0`** | **`local1`** | **`local2`** | **`local3`** | **`local4`** | **`local5`** | **`local6`** | **`local7`** | **`lpr`** | **`mail`** | **`news`** | **`syslog`** | **`user`** | **`uucp`**}
Specifies the types of system log messages to be collected in the system log.

`#(config event-log)` **`syslog loghost`** {*domain_name* | *ip_address*}
Specifies the host domain used for system log notifications.

```
#(config event-log) syslog no loghost
```

```
#(config event-log) view [configuration] [start [YYYY-mm-dd] [HH:MM:SS]] [end
    [YYYY-mm-dd] [HH:MM:SS]] [regex regex | substring string]
```

View the event-log configuration, using the #(config event-log) configuration command, or view the contents of the event-log, using the filters offered to narrow the view.

```
#(config event-log) when-full {overwrite | stop}
```

Specifies what should happen to the event log when the maximum size has been reached. overwrite overwrites the oldest information in a FIFO manner; stop disables event logging.

For More Information

- *Volume 10: Managing the Blue Coat SG Appliance*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) event-log
SGOS#(config event-log) syslog enable
 ok
```

#(config) exceptions

Synopsis

These commands allow you to configure built-in and user-defined exception response objects.

Syntax

```
#(config) exceptions
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config exceptions)
```

Subcommands

`#(config exceptions)` **`create`** *`exception_id`*
Creates the given exception.

`#(config exceptions)` **`company-name`** *`name`*
Sets the name used for the $(exception.company_name) substitution.

`#(config exceptions)` **`delete`** *`exception_id`*
Deletes the exception specified by *`exception_id`*.

`#(config exceptions)` **`edit`** *`exception_id or user_defined_exception_id`*
Changes the prompt to **`#(config exceptions [user-defined.]exception_id) on page 173`**.

`#(config exceptions)` **`exit`**
Exits `#(config exceptions)` mode and returns to `#(config)` mode.

`#(config exceptions)` **`inline`** {**`contact`** | **`details`** | **`format`** | **`help`** | **`http`** {**`contact`** | **`details`** | **`format`** | **`help`** | **`summary`**} | **`summary`**} *`eof_marker`*
Configures defaults for all exception objects.

`#(config exceptions)` **`load exceptions`**
Downloads new exceptions.

`#(config exceptions)` **`no path`**
Clears the network path to download exceptions.

`#(config exceptions)` **`path`** *`url`*
Specifies the network path to download exceptions.

`#(config exceptions)` **`user-defined inline`** {**`contact`** | **`details`** | **`format`** | **`help`** | **`http`** {**`contact`** | **`details`** | **`format`** | **`help`** | **`summary`**} | **`summary`**} *`eof_marker`*
Configures the top-level values for user-defined exceptions.

For More Information

- *Volume 6: VPM and Advanced Policy*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) exceptions
SGOS#(config exceptions) default contact
 ok
SGOS#(config exceptions) exit
SGOS#(config)
```

#(config exceptions [user-defined.]*exception_id)*

Synopsis

These commands allow you to edit an exception or a user-defined exception.

Syntax

```
#(config) exceptions
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config exceptions) user_defined_exception_id
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config exceptions user_defined_exception_id)
```

Subcommands

`#(config exceptions [user-defined.]`*`exception_id`*`)` **`exit`**
Exits `#(config exceptions [user-defined]` *`exception_id`*`)` mode and returns to `#(config exceptions)` mode.

`#(config exceptions [user-defined.]`*`exception_id`*`)` **`http-code`**
`numeric_http_response_code`
Configures this exception's HTTP response code.

`#(config exceptions [user-defined.]`*`exception_id`*`)` **`inline`** {**`contact`** | **`details`** | **`format`** | **`help`** | **`http`** {**`contact`** | **`details`** | **`format`** | **`help`** | **`summary`**} | **`summary`**} *`eof_marker`*
Configures this exception's substitution values.

For More Information

- *Volume 6: VPM and Advanced Policy*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) exceptions
SGOS#(config exceptions) edit testname
SGOS#(config exceptions user-defined testname) http-code 000
 ok
SGOS#(config exceptions user-defined testname) exit
SGOS#(config exceptions) exit
SGOS#(config)
```

#(config) exit

Synopsis

Exits from Configuration mode to Privileged mode, from Privileged mode to Standard mode. From Standard mode, the `exit` command closes the CLI session.

Syntax

```
#(config) exit
```

The `exit` command has no parameters or subcommands.

#(config) external-services

Synopsis

These commands allow you to configure your external services.

Use the edit ICAP commands to configure the ICAP service used to integrate the SG appliance with a virus scanning server. The configuration is specific to the virus scanning server and includes the server IP address, as well as the supported number of connections. If you are using the SG appliance with multiple virus scanning servers or multiple scanning services on the same server, add an ICAP service for each server or scanning service.

Note: When you define virus scanning policies, use the same service name. Make sure you type the ICAP service name accurately, whether you are configuring the service on the SG appliance or defining policies, since the name retrieves the other configuration settings for that service.

Syntax

```
#(config) external-services
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config external-services)
```

Subcommands

`#(config external-services)` **`create icap`** *`icap_service_name`*
Creates an ICAP service.

`#(config external-services)` **`create service-group`** *`service_group_name`*
Creates a service group.

`#(config external-services)` **`create websense`** *`websense_service_name`*
Creates a Websense service.

`#(config external-services)` **`delete`** *`name`*
Deletes an external service.

`#(config external-services)` **`edit`**
Changes the prompt to one of three external service edit commands:

`#(config icap icap_service_name)` on page 177

`#(config service-group service_group_name)` on page 179

`#(config websense websense_service_name)` on page 181

`#(config external-services)` **`exit`**
Exits `#(config external-services)` mode and returns to `#(config)` mode.

`#(config external-services)` **`inline http`** {**`icap-patience-details`** | **`icap-patience-header`** | **`icap-patience-help`** | **`icap-patience-summary`**}
Customizes ICAP patience page details for HTTP connections.

`#(config external-services)` **`icap feedback interactive patience-page`** *{seconds}*
For traffic associated with a Web browser, display a patience page after the specified duration.

`#(config external-services)` **`icap feedback`** {**`interactive`** | **`non-interactive`**) {**`trickle-start`** | **`trickle-end`** | **`none`**} *{seconds}*
For interactive traffic (associated with a Web browser) or non-traffic (originating from a client other than a Web browser), employ a data trickling method so the user receives a small amount (trickle-start) or large amount (trickle-end) of object data while waiting for the results of the content scan (ICAP). Begin trickling after the specified duration.

`#(config external-services)` **`inline ftp icap-patience-details`**
Customizes ICAP patience page details for FTP connections.

`#(config external-services)` **`view`**
Shows external services and external service groups.

For More Information

- *Volume 7: Managing Content*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) external-services
SGOS#(config external-services) create websense testwebsense
 ok
SGOS#(config external-services) exit
SGOS#(config)
```

#(config icap *icap_service_name)*

Synopsis

These commands allow you to edit ICAP parameters.

Syntax

```
#(config) external-services
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config external-services) create icap icap_service_name
#(config external-services) edit icap_service_name
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config icap icap_service_name)
```

Subcommands

`#(config icap icap_service_name) exit`
Exits `#(config ICAP name)` mode and returns to `#(config external-services)` mode.

`#(config icap icap_service_name) max-conn max_num_connections`
Sets the maximum number of connections for the ICAP service.

`#(config icap icap_service_name) methods {REQMOD | RESPMOD}`
Sets the method supported by the ICAP service. REQMOD is request modification and RESPMOD is response modification.

`#(config icap icap_service_name) no send {client-address | server-address}`
Specifies what should not be sent to the ICAP server.

`#(config icap icap_service_name) no notify virus-detected`
Specifies no notification to the administrator when a virus is detected.

`#(config icap icap_service_name) no patience-page`
Specifies that patience pages do not get served.

`#(config icap icap_service_name) no preview`
Specifies that previews do not get sent.

`#(config icap icap_service_name) notify virus-detected`
Specifies notification when viruses are found.

`#(config icap icap_service_name) patience-page seconds`
Sets the number of seconds (5 to 65535) to wait before serving a patience page.

`#(config icap icap_service_name) preview-size bytes`
Sets the preview size for the ICAP service.

`#(config icap icap_service_name) send client-address`
Specifies that the client address be sent to the ICAP service.

`#(config icap icap_service_name) send server-address`
Specifies that the server address be sent to the ICAP service.

`#(config icap icap_service_name) sense-settings`
Senses the service's setting by contacting the server.

`#(config icap icap_service_name) timeout seconds`
Sets the connection timeout for the ICAP services.

`#(config icap icap_service_name) url url`
Sets the URL for the ICAP services.

`#(config icap` *`icap_service_name`*`)` **`view`**
Displays the service's current configuration.

For More Information

- *Volume 7: Managing Content*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) external-services
SGOS#(config external-services) edit testicap
SGOS#(config icap testicap) send client-address
 ok
SGOS#(config icap testicap) exit
SGOS#(config external-services) exit
SGOS#(config)
```

#(config service-group *service_group_name)*

Synopsis

These commands allow you to edit service group parameters.

Syntax

`#(config)` **`external-services`**

This changes the prompt to:

`#(config external-services)` **`create service-group`** *`service_group_name`*

`#(config external-services)` **`edit`** *`service_group_name`*

This changes the prompt to:

`#(config service-group` *`service_group_name`*`)`

Subcommands

`#(config service-group` *`service_group_name`*`)` **`add`** *`entry_name`*
Adds an entry to this service group.

`#(config service-group` *`service_group_name`***`) edit`** *`entry_name`*
Changes the prompt to `#(config service-group` *`service_group_name entry_name`*`)`.

`#(config service-group` *`service_group_name entry_name`*`)` **`exit`**
Exits `#(config service-group` *`name/entry`* `name)` mode and returns to `#(config service-group` *`name`*`)` mode.

`#(config service-group` *`service_group_name entry_name`*`)` **`view`**
Shows this entry's configuration.

`#(config service-group` *`service_group_name entry_name`*`)` **`weight`** ***`0 to 255`***
Modifies this entry's weight.

`#(config service-group` *`service_group_name`*`)` **`exit`**
Exits `#(config service-group_name)` mode and returns to `#(config external-services)` mode.

`#(config service-group` *`service_group_name`*`)` **`view`**
Displays this service group's configuration.

For More Information

- *Volume 7: Managing Content*

Examples

```
SGOS#(config) external-services
SGOS#(config external-services) edit testgroup
SGOS#(config service-group testgroup) add testentry
 ok
SGOS#(config service-group testgroup) exit
SGOS#(config external-services) exit
SGOS#(config)
```

```
SGOS#(config) external-services
SGOS#(config external-services) edit testgroup
SGOS#(config service-group testgroup) edit testentry
SGOS#(config service-group testgroup testentry) weight 223
 ok
SGOS#(config service-group testgroup testentry) exit
SGOS#(config service-group testgroup) exit
SGOS#(config external-services) exit
SGOS#(config)
```

#(config websense *websense_service_name)*

Synopsis

These commands allow you to edit Websense parameters.

Syntax

```
#(config) external-services
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config external-services) create websense websense_service_name
#(config external-services) edit websense_service_name
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config websense websense_service_name)
```

Subcommands

`#(config websense` *`websense_service_name`*`)` **`apply-by-default`**
Applies Websense by default.

`#(config websense` *`websense_service_name`*`)` **`exit`**
Exits `#(config websense` *`websense_service_name`*`)` mode and returns to `#(config external-services)` mode.

`#(config websense` *`websense_service_name`*`)` **`fail-open`**
Fail open if service is applied by default.

`#(config websense` *`websense_service_name`*`)` **`host`** *`hostname`*
Remote Websense hostname or IP address.

`#(config websense` *`websense_service_name`*`)` **`max-conn`** *`max_num_connections`*
Specifies the maximum number of concurrent connections

`#(config websense` *`websense_service_name`*`)` **`no apply-by-default`**
Does not apply service by default.

`#(config websense` *`websense_service_name`*`)` **`no fail-open`**
Fail closed if service is applied by default.

`#(config websense` *`websense_service_name`*`)` **`no send`** {**`client-address`** | **`client-info`**}
Negates send options.

`#(config websense` *`websense_service_name`*`)` **`no serve-exception-page`**
Serves Websense message when content is blocked.

`#(config websense` *`websense_service_name`*`)` **`port`** *`port`*
Port number of remote Websense server.

`#(config websense` *`websense_service_name`*`)` **`send client-address`**
Sends the client address to the Websense server.

`#(config websense` *`websense_service_name`*`)` **`send client-info`**
Sends the client information to the Websense server.

`#(config websense` *`websense_service_name`*`)` **`sense-categories`**
Sense categories configured on the Websense server.

`#(config websense` *`websense_service_name`*`)` **`serve-exception-page`**
Serves built-in exception page when content is blocked.

`#(config websense` *`websense_service_name`*`)` **`test-url`** *`url`*
Tests a url against the Websense server.

`#(config websense` *`websense_service_name`*`)` **`timeout`** *`seconds`*
Sets the receive timeout in seconds.

`#(config websense` *`websense_service_name`*`)` **`version`** {**`4.3`** | **`4.4`**}
Sets the version of the Websense server.

`#(config websense` *`websense_service_name`*`)` **`view`**
Displays the service's current configuration.

For More Information

- *Volume 7: Managing Content*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) external-services
SGOS#(config external-services) edit testwebsense
SGOS#(config websense testwebsense) send client-address
 ok
SGOS#(config websense testwebsense) exit
SGOS#(config external-services) exit
SGOS#(config)
```

#(config) failover

Synopsis

These commands allow you to configure redundancy into your network.

Syntax

`#(config)` **`failover`**

This changes the prompt to:

`#(config failover)`

Subcommands

`#(config failover)` **`create`** *`group_address`*
Creates a failover group.

`#(config failover)` **`delete`** *`group_address`*
Deletes a failover group.

`#(config failover)` **`edit`** *`group_address`*
Changes the prompt to `#(config failover` *`group_address`*).

`#(config failover` *`group_address`*`)` {**`disable`** | **`enable`**}
Disables or enables failover group indicated by *`group_address`*.

`#(config failover` *`group_address`*`)` **`encrypted-secret`** *`encrypted_secret`*
(Optional but recommended) Refers to an encrypted password shared only with the group.

`#(config failover` *`group_address`*`)` **`exit`**
Exits `#(config failover` *`group_address`*`)` mode and returns to `#(config failover)` mode.

`#(config failover` *`group_address`*`)` **`interval`** *`interval_in_seconds`*
(Optional) Refers to the time between advertisements from the master to the multicast address. The default is 40 seconds.

`#(config failover` *`group_address`*`)` **`master`**
Defines the current system as the master and all other systems as slaves.

`#(config failover` *`group_address`*`)` **`multicast-address`** *`multicast_address`*
Refers to a multicast address where the master sends the keepalives (advertisements) to the slave systems.

`#(config failover` *`group_address`*`)` **`no interval`**
Resets the interval to the default value (40 seconds).

`#(config failover` *`group_address`*`)` **`no multicast-address`**
Removes the multicast address from the failover group.

`#(config failover` *`group_address`*`)` **`no master`**
Removes as configured master.

`#(config failover` *`group_address`*`)` **`no priority`**
Resets the priority to the default value (100).

`#(config failover` *`group_address`*`)` **`no secret`**
Clears the secret from the failover group.

`#(config failover` *`group_address`*`)` **`priority`** *`relative_priority`*
(Optional) Refers to the rank of slave systems. The range is from 1 to 253. (The master system, the one whose IP address matches the group address, gets 254.)

`#(config failover` *group_address*`)` **secret** *secret*
(Optional but recommended) Refers to a password shared only with the group. You can create a secret, which is then hashed.

`#(config failover` *group_address*`)` **view**
Shows the current settings for the failover group indicated by *group_address*.

`#(config failover)` **exit**
Exits `#(config failover)` mode and returns to `#(config)` mode.

`#(config failover)` **view** {**configuration** [*group_address* | **<Enter>**] | **statistics**}
View the configuration of a group or all groups or view all statistics.

For More Information

- *Volume 5: Advanced Networking*

Examples

```
SGOS#(config) failover
SGOS#(config failover) create 10.9.17.135
 ok
SGOS#(config failover) exit
SGOS#(config)

SGOS#(config) failover
SGOS#(config failover) edit 10.9.17.135
SGOS#(config failover 10.9.17.135) master
 ok
SGOS#(config failover 10.9.17.135) exit
SGOS#(config failover) exit
```

#(config) forwarding

Synopsis

Configures forwarding of content requests to defined hosts and groups through policy.

Syntax

```
#(config) forwarding
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config forwarding)
```

Subcommands

`#(config forwarding)` **`create host`** *`host_alias host_name`* `[http[=port] [https[=port]] [ftp[=port]] [mms[=port]] [rtsp[=port]] [tcp[=port]] [telnet[=port]] [ssl-verify-server[=yes | =no]] [group=group_name] [server | proxy]`

`#(config forwarding)` **`create group`** *`group_name`*
Creates a forwarding host/group. The only required entries under the `create` option (for a host) are *`host_alias`*, *`host_name`*, a protocol, and a port number. The port number can be defined explicitly (i.e., `http=8080`), or it can take on the default port value of the protocol, if one exists (i.e., enter `http`, and the default port value of `80` is entered automatically).

To create a host group, you must also include the `group=`*`group_name`* command. If this is the first mention of the group, *`group_name`*, then that group is automatically created with this host as its first member. Do not use this command when creating an independent host.

`#(config forwarding)` **`delete all`**
Deletes all forwarding hosts and groups.

`#(config forwarding)` **`delete group`** *`group_name`*
Deletes only the group identified by *`group_name`*.

`#(config forwarding)` **`delete host`** *`host_alias`*
Deletes only the host identified by *`host_alias`*.

`#(config forwarding)` **`download-via-forwarding`** {**`disable`** | **`enable`**}
Disables or enables configuration file downloading using forwarding.

`#(config forwarding)` **`edit`** *`host_or_group_alias`*
Changes the prompt to:

- **`#(config forwarding group_alias)`** on page 188
- **`#(config forwarding host_alias)`** on page 190

`#(config forwarding)` **`exit`**
Exits `#(config forwarding)` mode and returns to `#(config)` mode.

`#(config forwarding)` **`failure-mode`** {**`closed`** | **`open`**}
Sets the default forwarding failure mode to closed or open.

`#(config forwarding)` **`host-affinity http method`** {**`accelerator-cookie`** `[host_or_group_alias]` | **`client-ip-address`** `[host_or_group_alias]` | **`default`** `[host_or_group_alias]` | **`none`** `[host_or_group_alias]`}
Selects a host affinity method for HTTP. If a host or group alias is not specified for the `accelerator-cookie`, `client-ip-address`, or `none` options, the global default is used. Use the `default` option to specify default configurations for all the settings for a specified host or group.

`#(config forwarding)` **`host-affinity ssl-method`** {**`accelerator-cookie`** [*`host_or_group_alias`*] | **`client-ip-address`** [*`host_or_group_alias`*] | **`default`** [*`host_or_group_alias`*] | **`none`** [*`host_or_group_alias`*] | **`ssl-session-id`** [*`host_or_group_alias`*]}

Selects a host affinity method for SSL. If a host or group alias is not specified for the `accelerator-cookie`, `client-ip-address`, `none`, or `ssl-session-id` options, the global default is used. Use the `default` option to specify default configurations for all the settings for a specified host or group.

`#(config forwarding)` **`host-affinity other method`** {**`client-ip-address`** [*`host_or_group_alias`*] | **`default`** [*`host_or_group_alias`*] | **`none`** [*`host_or_group_alias`*]}

Selects a host affinity method (non-HTTP or non-SSL). If a host or group alias is not specified for the `client-ip-address`, or `none` options, the global default is used. Use the `default` option to specify default configurations for all the settings for a specified host or group.

`#(config forwarding)` **`host-affinity timeout`** *`minutes`*

Sets the timeout in minutes for the host affinity.

`#(config forwarding)` **`integrated-host-timeout`** *`minutes`*

Sets the timeout for aging out unused integrated hosts.

`#(config forwarding)` **`load-balance`** {**`default`** [*`group_alias`*] | **`domain-hash`** [*`group_alias`*] | **`least-connections`** [*`group_alias`*] | **`none`** [*`group_alias`*] | **`round-robin`** [*`group_alias`*] | **`url`** [*`group_alias`*]}

Sets if and how load balancing hashes between group members. If a group alias is not specified for the `domain-hash`, `least-connections`, `round-robin`, `url`, or `none` options, the global default is used. Use the `default` option to specify default configurations for all the settings for a specified group.

`#(config forwarding)` **`load-balance method`** {**`default`** [*`host_alias`*] | **`least-connections`** [*`host_alias`*] | **`none`** [*`host_alias`*] | **`round-robin`** [*`host_alias`*]}

Sets the load balancing method. If a host alias is not specified for the `least-connections`, `round-robin`, or `none` options, the global default is used. Use the `default` option to specify default configurations for all the settings for a specified host.

`#(config forwarding)` **`no path`**

Negates certain forwarding settings.

`#(config forwarding)` **`path`** *`url`*

Sets the network path to download forwarding settings.

`#(config forwarding)` **`sequence add`** *`host_or_group_alias`*

Adds an alias to the end of the default failover sequence.

`#(config forwarding)` **`sequence clear`**

Clears the default failover sequence.

`#(config forwarding)` **`sequence demote`** *`host_or_group_alias`*

Demotes an alias one place towards the end of the default failover sequence.

`#(config forwarding)` **`sequence promote`** *`host_or_group_alias`*

Promotes an alias one place towards the start of the default failover sequence.

`#(config forwarding)` **`sequence remove`** *`host_or_group_alias`*

Removes an alias from the default failover sequence.

`#(config forwarding)` **`view`**

Displays the currently defined forwarding groups or hosts.

For More Information

- *Volume 5: Advanced Networking*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) forwarding
SGOS#(config forwarding) download-via-forwarding disable
 ok
SGOS#(config forwarding) failure-mode closed
 ok
SGOS#(config forwarding) host-affinity method client-ip-address
 ok
SGOS#(config forwarding) load-balance hash domain group_name1
 ok
SGOS#(config forwarding) exit
SGOS#(config)
```

#(config forwarding *group_alias)*

Synopsis

These commands allow you to edit the settings of a specific forwarding group.

Syntax

```
#(config) forwarding
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config forwarding) create host_alias hostname protocol=port group=group_alias
#(config forwarding) edit group_alias
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config forwarding group_alias)
```

Subcommands

`#(config forwarding group_alias)` **`add`**
Adds a new group.

`#(config forwarding group_alias)` **`exit`**
Exits `#(config forwarding group_alias)` mode and returns to `#(config forwarding)` mode.

`#(config forwarding group_alias)` **`host-affinity http`** {**`accelerator-cookie`** | **`client-ip-address`** | **`default`** | **`none`**}
Changes the host affinity method (non-SSL) for this group.

`#(config forwarding group_alias)` **`host-affinity other`** {**`client-ip-address`** | **`default`** | **`none`**}
Changes the other host affinity method for this group.

`#(config forwarding group_alias)` **`host-affinity ssl`** {**`accelerator-cookie`** | **`client-ip-address`** | **`default`** | **`ssl-session-id`** | **`none`**}
Changes the host affinity method (SSL) for this group.

`#(config forwarding group_alias)` **`load-balance method`** {**`default`** | **`domain-hash`** | **`least-connections`** | **`none`** | **`round-robin`** | **`url-hash`**}
Changes the load balancing method.

`#(config forwarding group_alias)` **`remove`**
Removes an existing group.

`#(config forwarding group_alias)` **`view`**
Shows the current settings for this forwarding group.

For More Information

- *Volume 5: Advanced Networking*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) forwarding
SGOS#(config forwarding) edit test_group
SGOS#(config forwarding test_group) load-balance hash domain
 ok
SGOS#(config forwarding test_group) exit
SGOS#(config forwarding) exit
SGOS#(config)
```

#(config forwarding *host_alias)*

Synopsis

These commands allow you to edit the settings of a specific forwarding host.

Syntax

```
#(config) forwarding
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config forwarding) create host_alias hostname protocol=port
#(config forwarding) edit host_alias
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config forwarding host_alias)
```

Subcommands

`#(config forwarding host_alias)` **exit**
Exits `#(config forwarding host_alias)` mode and returns to `#(config forwarding)` mode.

`#(config forwarding host_alias)` **ftp** [*port*]
Changes the FTP port to the default port or to a port that you specify.

`#(config forwarding host_alias)` **host** *host_name*
Changes the host name.

`#(config forwarding host_alias)` **host-affinity http** {**accelerator-cookie** | **client-ip-address** | **default** | **none**}
Changes the host affinity method (non-SSL) for this host.

`#(config forwarding host_alias)` **host-affinity other** {**client-ip-address** | **default** | **none**}
Changes the other host affinity method for this host.

`#(config forwarding host_alias)` **host-affinity ssl** {**accelerator-cookie** | **client-ip-address** | **default** | **ssl-session-id** | **none**}
Changes the host affinity method (SSL) for this host.

`#(config forwarding host_alias)` **http** [*port*]
Changes the HTTP port to the default port or to a port that you specify.

`#(config forwarding host_alias)` **https** [*port*]
Changes the HTTPS port to the default port or to a port that you specify.

`#(config forwarding host_alias)` **load-balance method** {**default** | **least-connections** | **round-robin** | **none**}
Changes the load balancing method.

`#(config forwarding host_alias)` **mms** [*port*]
Changes the MMS port to the default port or to a port that you specify.

`#(config forwarding host_alias)` **no** {**ftp** | **http** | **https** | **mms** | **rtsp** | **ssl-verify-server** | **tcp** | **telnet**}
Deletes a setting for this host.

`#(config forwarding host_alias)` **proxy**
Makes the host a proxy instead of a server; any HTTPS or TCP ports are deleted.

`#(config forwarding host_alias)` **rtsp** [*port*]
Changes the RTSP port to the default port or to a port that you specify.

`#(config forwarding` *`host_alias`*`)` **`server`**
Makes the host a server instead of a proxy.

`#(config forwarding` *`host_alias`*`)` **`ssl-verify-server`**
Sets SSL to verify server certificates.

`#(config forwarding` *`host_alias`*`)` **`tcp`** [*`port`*]
Changes the TCP port to the default port or to a port that you specify.

`#(config forwarding` *`host_alias`*`)` **`telnet`** [*`port`*]
Changes the Telnet port to the default port or to a port that you specify.

`#(config forwarding` *`host_alias`*`)` **`view`**
Shows the current settings for this forwarding host.

For More Information

- *Volume 5: Advanced Networking*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) forwarding
SGOS#(config forwarding) edit test_host
SGOS#(config forwarding test_host) server
 ok
SGOS#(config forwarding test_host) exit
SGOS#(config forwarding) exit
```

#(config) front-panel

Synopsis

Use this command to configure the front panel. For instance, the front-panel LCD behavior can be configured using the `backlight` command.

Syntax

```
#(config) front-panel
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config front-panel)
```

Subcommands

`#(config front-panel)` **`backlight flash`**
The front-panel LCD is configured to flash, which can, for instance, help you locate a particular appliance in a room full of appliances.

`#(config front-panel)` **`backlight state`** {**`off`** | **`on`** | **`timeout`**}
The front-panel LCD is configured to be always turned on, always turned off, or to turn off after a specified length of time (use the backlight timeout command to configure the length of time).

`#(config front-panel)` **`backlight timeout`** *`seconds`*
Configures the length of time before the front-panel LCD turns off. You must also set the `backlight state timeout` command to configure timeout mode.

`#(config front-panel)` **`exit`**
Exits `#(config front-panel)` mode and returns to `#(config)` mode.

`#(config front-panel)` **`hashed-pin`** *`hashed_PIN`*
Specifies a front-panel PIN in hashed format.

`#(config front-panel)` **`no backlight flash`**
Stops the front-panel LCD from flashing.

`#(config front-panel)` **`pin`** *`PIN`*
Sets a four-digit PIN to restrict access to the front panel of the SG appliance. To clear the PIN, specify 0000 instead of a real PIN.

`#(config front-panel)` **`view`**
Displays the front panel settings.

For More Information

- *Volume 4: Securing the Blue Coat SG Appliance*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) front-panel
SGOS#(config front-panel) backlight state timeout
 ok
SGOS#(config front-panel) backlight timeout 60
 ok
SGOS#(config front-panel) exit
SGOS#(config)
```

#(config) ftp

Synopsis

Use this command to configure FTP parameters.

Syntax

`#(config)` **`ftp login-syntax`** {**`raptor`** | **`checkpoint`**}
Toggles between Raptor and Checkpoint login syntax. The default is Raptor.

`#(config)` **`ftp no welcome-banner`**
No text is displayed to an FTP client when a connection occurs.

`#(config)` **`ftp welcome-banner`** *`banner`*
Customizes the text displayed to an FTP client when a connection occurs.

For More Information

- *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*
- **`#(config caching ftp)`** on page 126

Example

```
SGOS #(config) ftp login-syntax checkpoint
ok
```

#(config) general

Synopsis

Use these commands to set global defaults for user behavior when license limits are exceeded and trusting client-provided destination IP addresses.

Syntax

```
SGOS#(config) general {trust-destination-ip | user-overflow-action}
```

Subcommands

`SGOS#(general) trust-destination-ip {enable | disable}`

Allows the SG appliance to trust a client-provided destination IP address and not do a DNS lookup.

- Proxy Edition default: `disable`
- MACH5 Edition default: `enable`

`SGOS#(general) user-overflow-action {bypass | none | queue}`

Set overflow behavior when there are more licensed-user connections going through the system than is allowed by the model license. The default is `none`.

For More Information

- *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*

Example

```
SGOS#(general) trust-destination-ip enable
ok
```

#(config) health-check

Synopsis

Use this command to configure health check settings.

Syntax

```
#(config) health-check
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config health-check)
```

Subcommands

`(config health-check)` **copy** *source-alias target-alias*
Copy from one health check to another (creating if necessary).

`(config health-check)` **create** {**composite** *alias_name* | **http** *alias_name url* | **https** *alias_name url* | **icmp** *alias_name hostname*| **ssl** *alias_name hostname [port]*| **tcp** *alias_name hostname [port]*}
Create a user-defined health check of the type specified.

`(config health-check)` **default e-mail** {**healthy** {**enable** |**disable**} | **report-all-ips** {**enable** | **disable**} | **sick** {**enable** | **disable**}}
Configure defaults for e-mail options.

`(config health-check)` **default event-log** {**healthy** {**enable** |**disable**} | **report-all-ips** {**enable** | **disable**} | **sick** {**enable** | **disable**}}
Configure defaults for event-log options.

`(config health-check)` **default failure-trigger** {**none** | *count*}
Configure defaults for the failure-trigger options.

`(config health-check)` **default interval** {**healthy** *seconds*| **sick** *seconds*}
Configure defaults for interval options.

`((config health-check)` **default snmp** {**healthy** {**enable** |**disable**} | **report-all-ips** {**enable** | **disable**} | **sick** {**enable** | **disable**}}
Configure defaults for snmp options.

`(config health-check)` **default threshold** {**healthy** *count* | **response-time** *milliseconds* | **sick** *count*}
Configure defaults for threshold options.

`(config health-check)` **delete** *alias_name*
Delete the specified health check.

`(config health-check)` **disable** {**healthy** *alias_name* | **sick** *alias_name*}
Disable the specified health check and have it always report health or sick.

`(config health-check)` **edit** *composite_health_check*
Edit the specified composite health check.

`(config health-check user.`*composite_health_check*`)` **add** *member_name*
Add the specified member to the composite health check group.

`(config health-check user.`*composite_health_check*`)` **combine** {**all-healthy** | **any-healthy** | **some-healthy**}
Require that all, some, or any members of the group report as healthy to have the composite health check report as healthy.

(config health-check user.*composite_health_check*) **e-mail** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**} | **report-all-ips** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**} | **sick** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**}}
Send e-mail notification when a health check reports healthy or sick, whether or not those reports are for all IP addresses.

(config health-check user.*composite_health_check*) **event-log** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**} | **report-all-ips** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**} | **sick** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**}}
Log an event when a health check reports healthy or sick, whether or not those reports are for all IP addresses.

(config health-check user.*composite_health_check*) **exit**
Leaves the composite health check editing submode.

(config health-check user.*composite_health_check*) **perform-health-check**
Does a health check on the members of the composite immediately and reports the result.

(config health-check user.*composite_health_check*) **remove** *member_name*
Remove a member from the composite group.

(config health-check user.*composite_health_check*) **snmp** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**} | **report-all-ips** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**} | **sick** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**}}
Sends a trap when the health check reports healthy or sick, whether or not those reports are for all IP addresses.

(config health-check user.*composite_health_check*) **use-defaults**
Re-sets the defaults of the health check to use the global defaults instead of any explicitly set values.

(config health-check user.*composite_health_check*) **view** {**configuration** | **statistics**}
Views the composite health check's configuration or statistics.

(config health-check) **edit** drtr.*test_name*
Allows you to configure options for the health check you specified.

(config health-check drtr.*test_name*) **clear-statistics**
Clears statistics for this health check.

(config health-check drtr.*test_name*) **e-mail** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**} | **report-all-ips** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**} | **sick** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**}}
Send e-mail notification when the health check reports healthy or sick, whether or not those reports are for all IP addresses.

(config health-check drtr.*test_name*) **event-log** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**} | **report-all-ips** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**} | **sick** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**}}
Log an event when the health check reports healthy or sick, whether or not those reports are for all IP addresses.

(config health-check drtr.*test_name*) **exit**
Leaves the health check editing mode.

(config health-check drtr.*test_name*) **failure-trigger** {**default** | **none** | *count*}
Configure options for the failure-trigger.

(config health-check drtr.*test_name*) **interval** {**healthy** {**default** | *seconds*} | **sick** {**default** | *seconds*}}
Configure intervals before the health check is re-run. The intervals can be different for health checks that are reporting healthy and health checks that are reporting sick.

(config health-check drtr.*test_name*) **perform-health-check**
Starts the health check immediately and reports the result.

(config health-check drtr.*test_name*) **snmp** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**} | **report-all-ips** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**} | **sick** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**}}
Sends a trap when the health check reports healthy, whenever an IP address health check reports healthy, or when a health check reports sick.

(config health-check drtr.*test_name*) **threshold** {**healthy** {**default** | *count*} | **response-time** {**default** | **none** | *milliseconds*} | **sick** {**default** | *count*}}
Set the level when health checks will report healthy or sick.

(config health-check drtr.*test_name*) **use-defaults**
Re-sets the defaults of the health check to use the global defaults instead of any explicitly set values.

(config health-check drtr.*test_name*) **view** {**configuration** | **statistics**}
Views the health check's configuration or statistics.

(config health-check) **edit** fwd.*group_name*
Allows you to configure options for the health check you specified.

(config health-check fwd.*group_name*) **combine** {**all healthy** | **any-healthy** | **some-healthy**}
Combines the results when a group test is healthy.

(config health-check fwd.*group_name*) **e-mail** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**} | **report-all-ips** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**} | **sick** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**}}
Send e-mail notification when the health check reports healthy or sick, whether or not those reports are for all IP addresses.

(config health-check fwd.*group_name*) **event-log** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**} | **report-all-ips** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**} | **sick** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**}}
Log an event when the health check reports healthy or sick, whether or not those reports are for all IP addresses.

(config health-check fwd.*group_name*) **exit**
Leaves the health check editing mode.

(config health-check fwd.*group_name*) **perform-health-check**
Starts the health check immediately and reports the result.

(config health-check fwd.*group_name*) **snmp** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**} | **report-all-ips** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**} | **sick** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**}}
Sends a trap when the health check reports healthy, whenever an IP address health check reports healthy, or when a health check reports sick.

(config health-check fwd.*group_name*) **use-defaults**
Re-sets the defaults of the health check to use the global defaults instead of any explicitly set values.

(config health-check fwd.*group_name*) **view** {**configuration** | **statistics**}
Views the health check's configuration or statistics.

(config health-check) **edit** fwd.*host_name*
Allows you to configure options for the health check you specified.

(config health-check fwd.*host_name*) **authentication** {**basic** | **disable** | **encrypted-password** *encrypted-password* | **password** *password* | **username** *username*}
(Used with HTTP or HTTPS health checks.) To test Basic authentication, you can enter the username and password of the target.

(config health-check fwd.*host_name*) **clear-statistics**
Clears statistics for this health check.

(config health-check fwd.*host_name*) **e-mail** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**} | **report-all-ips** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**} | **sick** {**default** | **enable** |

disable}}
Send e-mail notification when the health check reports healthy or sick, whether or not those reports are for all IP addresses.

(config health-check fwd.*host_name*) **event-log** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**} | **report-all-ips** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**} | **sick** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**}}
Log an event when the health check reports healthy or sick, whether or not those reports are for all IP addresses.

(config health-check fwd.*host_name*) **exit**
Leaves the health check editing mode.

(config health-check fwd.*host_name*) **failure-trigger** {**default** | **none** | *count*}
Configure options for the failure-trigger.

(config health-check fwd.*host_name*) **interval** {**healthy** {**default** | *seconds*} | **sick** {**default** | *seconds*}}
Configure intervals before the health check is re-run. The intervals can be different for health checks that are reporting healthy and health checks that are reporting sick.

(config health-check fwd.*host_name*) **perform-health-check**
Starts the health check immediately and reports the result.

(config health-check fwd.*host_name*) **proxy-authentication** {**basic** | **disable** | **encrypted-password** *encrypted-password* | **password** *password* | **username** *username*}
(Used with HTTP or HTTPS health checks, when intermediate proxies are between you and the target.) Enter the username and password of the intermediate proxy.

(config health-check fwd.*host_name*) **response-code** {**add** *codes* | **remove** *codes*}
To manage a list of codes that are considered successes, you can add or remove codes, separated by semi-colons. If a success code is received by the health check, the health check considers the HTTP/HTTPS test to be successful.

(config health-check fwd.*host_name*) **snmp** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**} | **report-all-ips** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**} | **sick** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**}}
Sends a trap when the health check reports healthy, whenever an IP address health check reports healthy, or when a health check reports sick.

(config health-check fwd.*host_name*) **threshold** {**healthy** {**default** | *count*} | **response-time** {**default** | **none** | *milliseconds*} | **sick** {**default** | *count*}}
Set the level when health checks will report healthy or sick.

(config health-check fwd.*host_name*) **type** (**http** *URL* | **https** *URL* | **icmp** *hostname* | **ssl** *hostname* [*port*] | **tcp** *hostname* [*port*]}
Set the number of consecutive healthy or sick test results before the health check actually reports as healthy or sick.

(config health-check fwd.*host_name*) **use-defaults**
Re-sets the defaults of the health check to use the global defaults instead of any explicitly set values.

(config health-check fwd.*host_name*) **view** {**configuration** | **statistics**}
Views the health check's configuration or statistics.

(config health-check) **edit** *health_check_name*
Allows you to configure options for the health check you specified.

(config health-check user.*health_check_name*) **authentication** {**basic** | **disable** | **encrypted-password** *encrypted-password* | **password** *password* | **username** *username*}
(Used with HTTP or HTTPS health checks.) To test Basic authentication, you can enter the username and password of the target.

(config health-check user.*health_check_name*) **clear-statistics**
Clears statistics for this health check.

(config health-check user.*health_check_name*) **e-mail** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**} | **report-all-ips** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**} | **sick** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**}}
Send e-mail notification when the health check reports healthy or sick, whether or not those reports are for all IP addresses.

(config health-check user.*health_check_name*) **event-log** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**} | **report-all-ips** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**} | **sick** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**}}
Log an event when the health check reports healthy or sick, whether or not those reports are for all IP addresses.

(config health-check user.*health_check_name*) **exit**
Leaves the health check editing mode.

(config health-check user.*health_check_name*) **failure-trigger** {**default** | **none** | *count*}
Configure options for the failure-trigger.

(config health-check user.*health_check_name*) **interval** {**healthy** {**default** | *seconds*} | **sick** {**default** | *seconds*}}
Configure intervals before the health check is re-run. The intervals can be different for health checks that are reporting healthy and health checks that are reporting sick.

(config health-check user.*health_check_name*) **perform-health-check**
Starts the health check immediately and reports the result.

(config health-check user.*health_check_name*) **proxy-authentication** {**basic** | **disable** | **encrypted-password** *encrypted-password* | **password** *password* | **username** *username*}
(Used with HTTP or HTTPS health checks, when intermediate proxies are between you and the target.) Enter the username and password of the intermediate proxy.

(config health-check user.*health_check_name*) **response-code** {**add** *codes* | **remove** *codes*}
To manage a list of codes that are considered successes, you can add or remove codes, separated by semi-colons. If a success code is received by the health check, the health check considers the HTTP/HTTPS test to be successful.

(config health-check user.*health_check_name*) **snmp** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**} | **report-all-ips** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**} | **sick** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**}}
Sends a trap when the health check reports healthy, whenever an IP address health check reports healthy, or when a health check reports sick.

(config health-check user.*health_check_name*) **threshold** {**healthy** {**default** | *count*} | **response-time** {**default** | **none** | *milliseconds*} | **sick** {**default** | *count*}}
Set the level when health checks will report healthy or sick.

(config health-check user.*health_check_name*) **type** (**http** *URL* | **https** *URL* | **icmp** *hostname* | **ssl** *hostname* [*port*] | **tcp** *hostname* [*port*])
Set the number of consecutive healthy or sick test results before the health check actually reports as healthy or sick.

(config health-check user.*health_check_name*) **use-defaults**
Re-sets the defaults of the health check to use the global defaults instead of any explicitly set values.

(config health-check user.*health_check_name*) **view** {**configuration** | **statistics**}
Views the health check's configuration or statistics.

(config health-check) **edit** icap.*test_name*
Allows you to configure options for the health check you specified.

(config health-check icap.*test_name*) **clear-statistics**
Clears statistics for this health check.

(config health-check icap.*test_name*) **e-mail** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**} | **report-all-ips** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**} | **sick** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**}}
Send e-mail notification when the health check reports healthy or sick, whether or not those reports are for all IP addresses.

(config health-check icap.*test_name*) **event-log** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**} | **report-all-ips** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**} | **sick** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**}}
Log an event when the health check reports healthy or sick, whether or not those reports are for all IP addresses.

(config health-check icap.*test_name*) **exit**
Leaves the health check editing mode.

(config health-check icap.*test_name*) **failure-trigger** {**default** | **none** | *count*}
Configure options for the failure-trigger.

(config health-check icap.*test_name*) **interval** {**healthy** {**default** | *seconds*} | **sick** {**default** | *seconds*}}
Configure intervals before the health check is re-run. The intervals can be different for health checks that are reporting healthy and health checks that are reporting sick.

(config health-check icap.*test_name*) **perform-health-check**
Starts the health check immediately and reports the result.

(config health-check icap.*test_name*) **snmp** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**} | **report-all-ips** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**} | **sick** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**}}
Sends a trap when the health check reports healthy, whenever an IP address health check reports healthy, or when a health check reports sick.

(config health-check icap.*test_name*) **threshold** {**healthy** {**default** | *count*} | **response-time** {**default** | **none** | *milliseconds*} | **sick** {**default** | *count*}}
Set the level when health checks will report healthy or sick.

(config health-check icap.*test_name*) **use-defaults**
Re-sets the defaults of the health check to use the global defaults instead of any explicitly set values.

(config health-check icap.*test_name*) **view** {**configuration** | **statistics**}
Views the health check's configuration or statistics.

(config health-check) **edit** socks.*test_name*
Allows you to configure options for the health check you specified.

(config health-check socks.*test_name*) **clear-statistics**
Clears statistics for this health check.

(config health-check socks.*test_name*) **e-mail** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**} | **report-all-ips** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**} | **sick** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**}}
Send e-mail notification when the health check reports healthy or sick, whether or not those reports are for all IP addresses.

(config health-check socks.*test_name*) **event-log** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**} | **report-all-ips** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**} | **sick** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**}}
Log an event when the health check reports healthy or sick, whether or not those reports are for all IP addresses.

(config health-check socks.*test_name*) **exit**
Leaves the health check editing mode.

(config health-check socks.*test_name*) **failure-trigger** {**default** | **none** | *count*}
Configure options for the failure-trigger.

(config health-check socks.*test_name*) **interval** {**healthy** {**default** | *seconds*} | **sick** {**default** | *seconds*}}
Configure intervals before the health check is re-run. The intervals can be different for health checks that are reporting healthy and health checks that are reporting sick.

(config health-check socks.*test_name*) **perform-health-check**
Starts the health check immediately and reports the result.

(config health-check socks.*test_name*) **snmp** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**} | **report-all-ips** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**} | **sick** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**}}
Sends a trap when the health check reports healthy, whenever an IP address health check reports healthy, or when a health check reports sick.

(config health-check socks.*test_name*) **threshold** {**healthy** {**default** | *count*} | **response-time** {**default** | **none** | *milliseconds*} | **sick** {**default** | *count*}}
Set the level when health checks will report healthy or sick.

(config health-check socks.*test_name*) **type** (**http** *URL* | **https** *URL* | **icmp** *hostname* | **ssl** *hostname* [*port*] | **tcp** *hostname* [*port*]}
Set the number of consecutive healthy or sick test results before the health check actually reports as healthy or sick.

(config health-check socks.*test_name*) **use-defaults**
Re-sets the defaults of the health check to use the global defaults instead of any explicitly set values.

(config health-check socks.*test_name*) **view** {**configuration** | **statistics**}
Views the health check's configuration or statistics.

(config health-check) **edit** ws.*test_name*
Allows you to configure options for the health check you specified.

(config health-check ws.*test_name*) **clear-statistics**
Clears statistics for this health check.

(config health-check ws.*test_name*) **e-mail** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**} | **report-all-ips** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**} | **sick** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**}}
Send e-mail notification when the health check reports healthy or sick, whether or not those reports are for all IP addresses.

(config health-check ws.*test_name*) **event-log** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**} | **report-all-ips** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**} | **sick** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**}}
Log an event when the health check reports healthy or sick, whether or not those reports are for all IP addresses.

(config health-check ws.*test_name*) **exit**
Leaves the health check editing mode.

(config health-check ws.*test_name*) **failure-trigger** {**default** | **none** | *count*}
Configure options for the failure-trigger.

(config health-check ws.*test_name*) **interval** {**healthy** {**default** | *seconds*} | **sick** {**default** | *seconds*}}
Configure intervals before the health check is re-run. The intervals can be different for health checks that are reporting healthy and health checks that are reporting sick.

(config health-check ws.*test_name*) **perform-health-check**
Starts the health check immediately and reports the result.

(config health-check ws.*test_name*) **snmp** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**}| **report-all-ips** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**}| **sick** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**}}
Sends a trap when the health check reports healthy, whenever an IP address health check reports healthy, or when a health check reports sick.

(config health-check ws.*test_name*) **test-url** {**default** | *url*}
Sets the test URL to default.

(config health-check ws.*test_name*) **threshold** {**healthy** {**default** | *count*} | **response-time** {**default** | **none** | *milliseconds*} | **sick** {**default** | *count*}}
Set the level when health checks will report healthy or sick.

(config health-check ws.*test_name*) **use-defaults**
Re-sets the defaults of the health check to use the global defaults instead of any explicitly set values.

(config health-check ws.*test_name*) **view** {**configuration** | **statistics**}
Views the health check's configuration or statistics.

(config health-check) **edit** ws.*group_name*
Allows you to configure options for the health check you specified.

(config health-check ws.*group_name*) **combine** {**all healthy** | **any-healthy** | **some-healthy**}
Combines the results when a group test is healthy.

(config health-check ws.*group_name*) **e-mail** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**}| **report-all-ips** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**}| **sick** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**}}
Send e-mail notification when the health check reports healthy or sick, whether or not those reports are for all IP addresses.

(config health-check ws.*group_name*) **event-log** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**}| **report-all-ips** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**}| **sick** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**}}
Log an event when the health check reports healthy or sick, whether or not those reports are for all IP addresses.

(config health-check ws.*group_name*) **exit**
Leaves the health check editing mode.

(config health-check ws.*group_name*) **perform-health-check**
Starts the health check immediately and reports the result.

(config health-check ws.*group_name*) **snmp** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**}| **report-all-ips** {**healthy** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**}| **sick** {**default** | **enable** | **disable**}}
Sends a trap when the health check reports healthy, whenever an IP address health check reports healthy, or when a health check reports sick.

(config health-check ws.*group_name*) **use-defaults**
Re-sets the defaults of the health check to use the global defaults instead of any explicitly set values.

(config health-check ws.*group_name*) **view** {**configuration** | **statistics**}
Views the health check's configuration or statistics.

(config health-check) **enable** *alias_name*
Enable the health check of the specified name.

(config health-check) **exit**
Leave the health-check configuration mode.

(config health-check) **perform-health-check** *alias_name*
Runs the specified health check.

`(config health-check)` **view** {**configuration** | **quick-statistics** | **statistics**}
Views the configuration or statistics for all health checks. You can also view a summary of the health-check statistics.

For More Information

- *Volume 5: Advanced Networking*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) health-check
SGOS#(config health-check) create composite composite1
SGOS#(config health-check) edit composite1
SGOS#(config health-check user.composite1) view statistics
Enabled     Health check failed     DOWN
```

#(config) hide-advanced

See

- `# hide-advanced` on page 52.

#(config) hostname

Synopsis

Use this command to assign a name to an SG appliance. Any descriptive name that helps identify the system is sufficient.

Syntax

`#(config)` **`hostname`** *`name`*

Associates *`name`* with the current SG appliance.

For More Information

- *Volume 5: Advanced Networking*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) hostname "Blue Coat Demo"
 ok
```

#(config) http

Synopsis

Use this command to configure HTTP settings.

Syntax

`#(config)` **`http [no] add-header client-ip`**
Adds the `client-ip` header to forwarded requests.

`#(config)` **`http [no] add-header front-end-https`**
Adds the `front-end-https` header to forwarded requests.

`#(config)` **`http [no] add-header via`**
Adds the `via` header to forwarded requests.

`#(config)` **`http [no] add-header x-forwarded-for`**
Adds the `x-forwarded-for` header to forwarded requests.

`#(config)` **`http [no] byte-ranges`**
Enables HTTP byte-range support.

If byte-range support is disabled, then HTTP treats all byte range requests as non-cacheable. This means that HTTP never even checks to see if the object is in the cache, but forwards the request to the origin-server and does not cache the result. So the range request has no affect on the cache. For instance, if the object was in the cache before a range request, it would still be in the cache afterward—the range request does not delete any currently cached objects. Also, the Range header is not modified when forwarded to the origin-server.

If the requested byte range is type 3 or 4, then the request is treated as if byte-range support is disabled. That is, the request is treated as non-cacheable and has no affect on objects in the cache.

`#(config)` **`http [no] cache authenticated-data`**
Caches any data that appears to be authenticated.

`#(config)` **`http [no] cache expired`**
Retains cached objects older than the explicit expiration.

`#(config)` **`http [no] cache personal-pages`**
Caches objects that appear to be personal pages.

`#(config)` **`http [no] force-ntlm`**
Uses NTLM for Microsoft Internet Explorer proxy.

`#(config)` **`http ftp-proxy-url root-dir`**
URL path is absolute in relation to the root.

`#(config)` **`http ftp-proxy-url user-dir`**
URL path is relative to the user's home directory.

`#(config)` **`http [no] parse meta-tag {cache-control | expires | pragma-no-cache}`**
Parses HTML objects for the `cache-control`, `expires`, and `pragma-no-cache` meta-tags.

`#(config)` **`http [no] persistent client`**
Enables support for persistent client requests from the browser.

`#(config)` **`http [no] persistent server`**
Enables support for persistent server requests to the Web server.

`#(config)` **`http [no] persistent-timeout client`** *`num_seconds`*
Sets persistent connection timeout for the client to *`num_seconds`*.

`#(config)` **`http [no] persistent-timeout server`** *`num_seconds`*
Sets persistent connection timeout for the server to *`num_seconds`*.

`#(config)` **`http [no] pipeline client {requests | redirects}`**
Prefetches either embedded objects in client requests or redirected responses to client requests.

`#(config)` **`http [no] pipeline prefetch {requests | redirects}`**
Prefetches either embedded objects in pipelined objects or redirected responses to pipelined requests.

`#(config)` **`http [no] proprietary-headers bluecoat`**
Enables the Blue Coat proprietary HTTP header extensions.

`#(config)` **`http receive-timeout client`** *`num_seconds`*
Sets receive timeout for client to *`num_seconds`*.

`#(config)` **`http receive-timeout refresh`** *`num_seconds`*
Sets receive timeout for refresh to *`num_seconds`*.

`#(config)` **`http receive-timeout server`** *`num_seconds`*
Sets receive timeout for server to *`num_seconds`*.

`#(config)` **`http [no] revalidate-pragma-no-cache`**
Revalidates "Pragma: no-cache."

`#(config)` **`http [no] strict-expiration refresh`**
Forces compliance with explicit expirations by never refreshing objects before their explicit expiration.

`#(config)` **`http [no] strict-expiration serve`**
Forces compliance with explicit expirations by never serving objects after their explicit expiration.

`#(config)` **`http [no] strip-from-header`**
Removes HTTP information from headers.

`#(config)` **`http [no] substitute conditional`**
Uses an HTTP "get" in place of HTTP 1.1 conditional get.

`#(config)` **`http [no] substitute ie-reload`**
Uses an HTTP "get" for Microsoft Internet Explorer reload requests.

`#(config)` **`http [no] substitute if-modified-since`**
Uses an HTTP "get" instead of "get-if-modified."

`#(config)` **`http [no] substitute pragma-no-cache`**
Uses an HTTP "get" instead of "get pragma: no-cache."

`#(config)` **`http [no] tolerant-request-parsing`**
Enables or disables the HTTP tolerant-request-parsing flag.

`#(config)` **`http upload-with-pasv disable`**
Disables uploading with Passive FTP.

`#(config)` **`http upload-with-pasv enable`**
Enables uploading with Passive FTP.

`#(config)` **`http version {1.0 | 1.1}`**
Indicates the version of HTTP that should be used by the SG appliance.

`#(config)` **`http [no] www-redirect`**
Redirects to `www.`*`host`*`.com` if host not found.

`#(config)` **`http [no] xp-rewrite-redirect`**
Rewrites origin server 302s to 307s for Windows XP IE requests.

For More Information

- **`#(config http)`** on page 238
- **`#(config http-console)`** on page 131
- *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*

#(config) icp

Synopsis

ICP is a caching communication protocol. It allows a cache to query other caches for an object, without actually requesting the object. By using ICP, the SG appliance determines if the object is available from a neighboring cache, and which device provides the fastest response.

After you have created the ICP or advanced forwarding configuration file, place the file on an FTP or HTTP server so it can be downloaded to the SG appliance.

Syntax

`#(config)` **`icp no path`**
Negates the path previously set using the command `icp path` *`url`*.

`#(config)` **`icp path`** *`url`*
Specifies the network location of the ICP configuration file to download.

For More Information

- *Volume 5: Advanced Networking*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) icp path 10.25.36.47/files/icpconfig.txt
 ok
```

#(config) identd

Synopsis

IDENTD implements the TCP/IP IDENT user identification protocol. IDENTD operates by looking up specific TCP/IP connections and returning the user name of the process owning the connection.

Syntax

```
#(config) identd
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config identd)
```

Subcommands

`#(config identd)` **`client server-query-port`** *port*
Specifies the port to query on the client machines. The default is 113.

`#(config identd)` **`client timeout`** *seconds*
Specifies the timeout in seconds for identd. queries. The default is 30 seconds.

`#(config identd)` **`trim-whitespace`** {**`enable`** | **`disable`**}
Specify whether to trim leading and trailing whitespace in the username portion of the identd query response. By default this is disabled.

If client identd servers are adding insignificant whitespace to the username field you might need to enable this option to trim the username as expected.

`#(config identd)` **`exit`**
Exits configure identd mode and returns to configure mode.

`#(config identd)` server `enable | disable`

`#(config identd)` **`view`**
Displays current IDENTD settings.

For More Information

- *Volume 5: Advanced Networking*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) identd
SGOS#(config identd) enable
 ok
SGOS#(config identd) exit
SGOS#(config)
```

#(config) im

Synopsis

You can configure the IM proxy settings, assign an administrator buddy name for each client type, and determine how exception messages are sent.

Syntax

`#(config) **im aol-admin-buddy** *buddy*`
Set AOL admin buddy name.

`#(config) **im aol-direct-proxy-host** *host*`
Set AOL direct proxy host.

`#(config) **im aol-http-host** *host*`
Set AOL HTTP host.

`#(config) **im aol-native-host** *host*`
Set AOL native host

`#(config) **im buddy-spoof-message** *message_text*`
Set buddy spoof message.

`#(config) **im exceptions** {**in-band** | **out-of-band**}`
in-band: Deliver IM exceptions in band.
out-of-band: Deliver IM exceptions out of band.

`#(config) **im explicit-proxy-vip** *virtual_IP_address*`
Set explicit proxy virtual IP address.

`#(config) **im msn-admin-buddy** *buddy*`
Set MSN admin buddy name.

`#(config) **im msn-http-host** *host*`
Set MSN HTTP host.

`#(config) **im msn-native-host** *host*`
Set MSN native host.

`#(config) **no explicit-proxy-vip**`
Disables explicit proxy VIP support.

`#(config) **im yahoo-admin-buddy** *buddy*`
Set Yahoo admin buddy name.

`#(config) **im yahoo-download-host** *host*`
Set Yahoo download host.

`#(config) **im yahoo-http-host** *host*`
Set Yahoo HTTP host.

`#(config) **im yahoo-http-chat-host** *host*`
Set Yahoo HTTP chat host.

`#(config) **im yahoo-native-host** *host*`
Set Yahoo native host.

`#(config) **im yahoo-upload-host** *host*`
Set Yahoo upload host.

For More Information

- *Volume 3: Web Communication Proxies*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) im exceptions in-band
 ok
SGOS#(config) im yahoo-admin-buddy testname
 ok
```

#(config) inline

See

- `# inline` on page 53.

#(config) installed-systems

Synopsis

Use this command to manage the list of installed SG systems.

Syntax

```
#(config) installed-systems
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config installed-systems)
```

Subcommands

`#(config installed-systems)` **`default`** *`system_number`*
Sets the default system to the system indicated by *`system_number`*.

`#(config installed-systems)` **`delete`** *`system_number`*
Deletes the system indicated by *`system_number`*.

`#(config installed-systems)` **`exit`**
Exits configure installed-systems mode and returns to configure mode.

`#(config installed-systems)` **`lock`** *`system_number`*
Locks the system indicated by *`system_number`*.

`#(config installed-systems)` **`no`** {**`lock`** *`system_number`* | **`replace`**}
lock *`system_number:`* Unlocks the system indicated by *`system_number`* if it is currently locked.
replace: Specifies that the system currently tagged for replacement should not be replaced. The default replacement is used (oldest unlocked system).

`#(config installed-systems)` **`replace`** *`system_number`*
Specifies that the system identified by *`system_number`* is to be replaced next.

`#(config installed-systems)` **`view`**
Shows installed SG systems.

For More Information

- *Volume 10: Managing the Blue Coat SG Appliance*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) installed-systems
SGOS#(config installed-systems) default 2
 ok
SGOS#(config installed-systems) lock 1
 ok
SGOS#(config installed-systems) exit
SGOS#(config)
```

#(config) interface

Synopsis

This command enables you to configure the network interfaces (both physical and Virtual LAN).

The built-in Ethernet adapter is configured for the first time using the setup console. If you want to modify the built-in adapter configuration, or if you have multiple adapters, you can configure each one using the command-line interface.

Syntax

`#(config)` **`interface fast-ethernet`** *`interface_number`*

where *`interface_number`* sets the number of the fast Ethernet connection to *`interface_number`*. Valid values for *`interface_number`* are 0 through 3, inclusive.

`#(config)` **`interface`** *`interface_number`*

`This changes the prompt to #(config interface interface_number)`

#(config interface interface_number)

Syntax

`#(config)` **`interface`** *`interface_number`*

This changes the prompt to #(config interface *`interface_number`*)

Subcommands

`#(config interface` *`interface_number`*`)` **`allow-intercept`** {**`enable`** | **`disable`**}
Allow transparent interception on this interface.*

`#(config interface` *`interface_number`*`)` **`exit`**
Exits `#(config interface number)` mode and returns to `#(config)` mode.

`#(config interface` *`interface_number`*`)` **`full-duplex`**
Configures the interface for full-duplex.

`#(config interface` *`interface_number`*`)` **`half-duplex`**
Configures the interface for half-duplex.

`#(config interface` *`interface_number`*`)` **`ip-address`** *`ip-address`*
Sets the IP address for this interface to *`ip_address`*

`#(config interface` *`interface_number`*`)` **`instructions`** {**`accelerated-pac`** | **`central-pac`** ***`url`*** | **`default-pac`** | **`proxy`**}
accelerated-pac: Configures browser to use your accelerated pac file.
central-pac: Configures browser to use your pac file.
default-pac: Configures browser to use a Blue Coat pac file.
proxy: Configures browser to use a proxy.

`#(config interface` *`interface_number`*`)` **`link-autosense`** {**`enable`** | **`disable`**}
Specifies that the interface should autosense speed and duplex.

`#(config interface` *`interface_number`*`)` **`mtu-size`** *`size`*
Specifies the MTU size.

`#(config interface` *`interface_number`*`)` **`no`** {**`accept-inbound`** | **`link-autosense`**}
Negates the current accept-inbound or link-autosense settings.

`#(config interface` *`interface_number`*`)` **`reject-inbound`** {**`enable`** | **`disable`**}
Rejects inbound connections on the interface.*

`#(config interface` *`interface_number`*`)` **`speed`** {**`10`** | **`100`** | **`1gb`**}
Specifies the interface speed.

`#(config interface` *`interface_number`*`)` **`subnet-mask`** *`subnet-mask`*
Sets the subnet mask for the interface.

`#(config interface` *`interface_number`*`)` **`native-vlan`** *`number`*
Sets the native VLAN value for this interface.

`#(config interface` *`interface_number`*`)` **`vlan-trunk`** {**`enable`** | **`disable`**}
Enables VLAN trunking on this interface.

`#(config interface` *`interface_number`*`)` **`clear-all-vlans`**
Resets all VLAN parameters to their default values.

`#(config interface` *`interface_number`*`)` **`view`**
Displays the interface settings.

*The `allow-intercept` and `reject-inbound` commands are interface-level configurations and are not bridge-specific. The `reject-inbound` command always has precedence.

The following table describes how traffic is handled for the three possible settings of these options.

reject-inbound	allow-intercept	Non-proxy ports (mgmt-console, ssh, etc)	Explicit proxy ports	Transparent proxy ports	Other ports
Disabled	Enabled	Terminated	Terminated	Terminated	Forwarded
Disabled	Disabled	Terminated	Terminated	Forwarded	Forwarded
Enabled	Enabled/Disabled	Silently dropped	Silently dropped	Silently dropped	Silently dropped

For More Information

- *Volume 1: Getting Started*

Example

```
#(config) interface 0
#(config interface 0) ip-address 10.252.10.54
 ok
#(config interface 0) instructions accelerated-pac
 ok
#(config interface 0) subnet-mask 255.255.255.0
 ok
#(config interface 0) exit
SGOS#(config) interface 1
#(config interface 1) ip-address 10.252.10.72
ok
#(config interface 1) subnet-mask 255.255.255.0
 ok
#(config interface 1) exit
```

#(config) ip-default-gateway

Synopsis

A key feature of the SG appliance is the ability to distribute traffic originating at the cache through multiple IP gateways. Further, you can fine tune how the traffic is distributed among gateways. This feature works with any routing protocol (for example, static routes or RIP).

Note: Load balancing through multiple IP gateways is independent from the per-interface load balancing that the SG appliance automatically does when more than one network interface is installed.

Syntax

```
#(config) ip-default-gateway ip_address [preference group (1-10)] [weight
    (1-100)]
```

Specifies the IP address of the default gateway to be used by the SG appliance.

For More Information

- *Volume 5: Advanced Networking*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) ip-default-gateway 10.25.36.47
 ok
```

#(config) license-key

Synopsis

Use this command to configure license key settings.

Syntax

`#(config)` **`license-key auto-update`** {**`disable`** | **`enable`**}
Disables or enables auto-update of the `Blue Coat` license key.

`#(config)` **`license-key no path`**
Negates certain license key settings.

`#(config)` **`license-key path`** *`url`*
Specifies the network path to download the license key.

For More Information

- *Volume 1: Getting Started*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) license-key no path
 ok
```

#(config) line-vty

Synopsis

When you have a CLI session, that session remains open as long as there is activity. If you leave the session idle, the connection eventually times out and you must reconnect. The default timeout is five minutes. You can set the timeout and other session-specific options using the `line-vty` command.

Syntax

```
#(config) line-vty
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config line-vty)
```

Subcommands

`#(config line-vty)` **`exit`**
Exits configure line-vty mode and returns to configure mode.

`#(config line-vty)` **`length`** *`num_lines_on_screen`*
Specifies the number of lines of code that should appear on the screen at one time. Specify 0 to scroll without pausing.

`#(config line-vty)` **`no length`**
Disables screen paging.

`#(config line-vty)` **`telnet`** {**`no transparent`** | **`transparent`**}
Indicates that this is a Telnet protocol-specific configuration. If you specify `no transparent`, carriage returns are sent to the console as a carriage return plus linefeed. If you specify `transparent`, carriage returns are sent to the console as a carriage return.

`#(config line-vty)` **`timeout`** *`minutes`*
Sets the line timeout to the number of minutes indicated by *`minutes`*.

`#(config line-vty)` **`view`**
Displays running system information.

Example

```
SGOS#(config) line-vty
SGOS#(config line-vty) timeout 60
 ok
SGOS#(config line-vty) exit
SGOS#(config)
```

#(config) load

See

- `# load` on page 57.

#(config) mapi

Synopsis

Configures MAPI

Syntax

```
SGOS#(config) mapi
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
SGOS#(config mapi) [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

`SGOS#(config mapi)` **`batching {enable | disable}`**
Enables or disables batching. The default is enabled.

`SGOS#(config mapi)` **`exit`**
Exits the mapi mode and returns to SGOS#(config) mode.

`SGOS#(config mapi)` **`handoff (enable | disable}`**
Use the endpoint-mapper service. The default is enabled.

`SGOS#(config mapi)` **`keep-alive duration`** *`1-168`*
Sets the length of time, in hours, that the session is active. The default is 72 hours.

`SGOS#(config mapi)` **`keep-alive {enable | disable}`**
Enables the keep-alive configuration. The default is disabled.

`SGOS#(config mapi)` **`keep-alive interval`** *`15-60`*
Sets the length of time, in minutes, before the service checks for new e-mail. The default is 30 minutes.

`SGOS#(config map)` **`keep-alive max-sessions`** *`1-200`*
Sets the maximum number of active sessions at any given point. The default is 100 sessions. If the limit is reached, the oldest session is dropped.

`SGOS#(config mapi)` **`view`**
Views the MAPI configuration.

For More Information

- "#(config endpoint-mapper)" on page 236

Example

```
SGOS#(config mapi) view
Batching:                                enabled
Keep-Alive:                              disabled
Keep-Alive Duration (hours):             72
Keep-Alive Interval (minutes):           30
Keep-Alive Maximum Sessions:             100
Endpoint Mapper Handoff:                  enabled
```

#(config) netbios

Synopsis

Use this command to configure NetBIOS.

Syntax

`#(config) **netbios**`

This changes the prompt to:

`#(config netbios)`

`#(config netbios) **exit**`
Exits configure netbios mode and returns to configure mode.

`#(config netbios) **nbstat requester** {**retries** | **timeout**} | **responder** {**enable** | **disable**}`
Requester is enabled by default, with three retries and a five-second timeout. Responder is disabled by default.

`#(config netbios) **view**`
Shows the NetBIOS settings.

For More Information

- *Volume 5: Advanced Networking*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) netbios
SGOS#(config netbios) nbstat responder enable
 ok
SGOS#(config netbios) exit
SGOS#(config)
 ok
```

#(config) no

Synopsis

Use this command to negate the current settings for the archive configuration, content priority, IP default gateway, SOCKS machine, or system upgrade path.

Syntax

`#(config)` **`no archive-configuration`**
Clears the archive configuration upload site.

`#(config)` **`no bridge`** *`bridge_name`*
Clears the bridge configuration.

`#(config)` **`no content`** {**`priority`** {**`regex`** *`regex`* | **`url`** *`url`*} | **`outstanding-requests`** {**`delete`** | **`priority`** | **`revalidate`**} *`regex`*}
`priority` {regex *`regex`* | url *`url`*}*:* Removes a deletion regular expression policy or a deletion URL policy.
`outstanding-requests` {*`delete`* | *`priority`* | *`revalidate`*} *`regex:`* Deletes a specific, regular expression command in-progress (revalidation, priority, or deletion).

`#(config)` **`no ip-default-gateway`** *`ip_address`*
Sets the default gateway IP address to zero.

`#(config)` **`no serial-number`**
Removes the serial number.

`#(config)` **`no socks-machine-id`**
Removes the SOCKS machine ID from the configuration.

`#(config)` **`no upgrade-path`**
Clears the upgrade image download path.

For More information

- *Volume 1: Getting Started*
- *Volume 5: Advanced Networking*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) no archive-configuration
 ok
SGOS#(config) no content priority regex http://.*cnn.com
 ok
SGOS#(config) no content priority url http://www.bluecoat.com
 ok
SGOS#(config) no ip-default-gateway 10.252.10.50
 ok
SGOS#(config) no socks-machine-id
 ok
SGOS#(config) no upgrade-path
 ok
```

#(config) ntp

Synopsis

Use this command to set NTP parameters. Network Time Protocol (NTP) is a protocol that is used to synchronize computer clock times in a network of computers. The SG appliance sets the UTC time by connecting to an NTP server. The SG appliance includes a list of NTP servers available on the Internet. If an NTP server is not available, you can set the time manually using the Management Console.

Syntax

`#(config) ntp clear`
Removes all entries from the NTP server list.

`#(config) ntp disable`
Disables NTP.

`#(config) ntp enable`
Enables NTP.

`#(config) ntp interval` *`minutes`*
Specifies how often to perform NTP server queries.

`#(config) ntp no server` *`domain_name`*
Removes the NTP server named *`domain_name`* from the NTP server list.

`#(config) ntp server` *`domain_name`*
Adds the NTP server named *`domain_name`* from the NTP server list.

For More Information

- *Volume 1: Getting Started*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) ntp server clock.tricity.wsu.edu
 ok
```

#(config) policy

Synopsis

Use this command to specify central and local policy file location, status, and other options.

Syntax

`#(config)` **`policy central-path`** *`url`*
Specifies the network path (indicated by *`url`*) from which the central policy file can be downloaded.

`#(config)` **`policy forward-path`** *`url`*
Specifies the network path (indicated by *`url`*) from which the forward policy file can be downloaded.

`#(config)` **`policy local-path`** *`url`*
Specifies the network path (indicated by *`url`*) from which the local policy file can be downloaded.

`#(config)` **`policy no central-path`**
Specifies that the current central policy file URL setting should be cleared.

`#(config)` **`policy no forward-path`**
Specifies that the current forward policy file URL setting should be cleared.

`#(config)` **`policy no local-path`**
Specifies that the current local policy file URL setting should be cleared.

`#(config)` **`policy no notify`**
Specifies that no e-mail notification should be sent if the central policy file should change.

`#(config)` **`policy no subscribe`**
Specifies that the current policy should not be automatically updated in the event of a central policy change.

`#(config)` **`policy no vpm-cpl-path`**
Clears the network path to download VPM CPL policy.

`#(config)` **`policy no vpm-software`**
Clears the network path to download VPM software.

`#(config)` **`policy no vpm-xml-path`**
Clears the network path to download VPM XML policy.

`#(config)` **`policy notify`**
Specifies that an e-mail notification should be sent if the central policy file should change.

`#(config)` **`policy order`** *`order of v)pm, l)ocal, c)entral`*
Specifies the policy evaluation order.

`#(config)` **`policy poll-interval`** *`minutes`*
Specifies the number of minutes that should pass between tests for central policy file changes.

`#(config)` **`policy poll-now`**
Tests for central policy file changes immediately.

`#(config)` **`policy proxy-default`** {**`allow`** | **`deny`**}
allow: The default proxy policy is `allow`.
deny: The default proxy policy is `deny`.

`#(config)` **`policy reset`**
Clears all policies.

`#(config)` **`policy subscribe`**
Indicates that the current policy should be automatically updated in the event of a central policy change.

`#(config)` **`policy vpm-cpl-path`** *`url`*
Specifies the network path (indicated by *`url`*) from which the vpm-cpl policy file can be downloaded.

`#(config)` **`policy vpm-software`** *`url`*
Specifies the network path to download the VPM software.

`#(config)` **`policy vpm-xml-path`** *`url`*
Specifies the network path (indicated by *`url`*) from which the vpm-xml policy file can be downloaded.

For More Information

- *Volume 6: VPM and Advanced Policy*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) policy local-path http://www.server1.com/local.txt
 ok
SGOS#(config) policy central-path http://www.server2.com/central.txt
 ok
SGOS#(config) policy poll-interval 10
```

#(config) profile

Synopsis

Sets your system profile to normal (the default setting) or portal (to accelerate the server).

Syntax

`#(config)` **`profile bwgain`**
Sets your system profile to bandwidth gain.

`#(config)` **`profile normal`**
Sets your system profile to normal.

`#(config)` **`profile portal`**
Sets your system profile to portal.

For More Information

- *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) profile normal
 ok
```

#(config) proxy-services

Synopsis

Manages the proxy services on the SG appliance.

Syntax

```
#(config) proxy-services
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config proxy-services)
```

Subcommands

Note: Additional information is found under options that are hyperlinked (blue).

`#(config proxy-services)` **`create`** *`service_type service_name`*
Creates a proxy service of the type and name that you specify. For more information on creating specific proxy services, see **`Available Service Types`** on page 228.

`#(config proxy-services)` **`delete`** *`service_name`*
Deletes the specified proxy service.

`#(config proxy-services)` **`dynamic-bypass`**
Changes the prompt to **`#(config dynamic-bypass)`** on page 230 to allow you to manage dynamic-bypass settings.

`#(config proxy-services)` **`edit`** *`service_name`*
Allows you to edit a proxy service of the specified name. For more information on editing specific proxy services, see **`Available Service Types`** on page 228.

`#(config proxy-services)` **`exit`**
Returns to the `#(config)` prompt.

`#(config proxy-services) restricted-intercept`
Changes the prompt to **`#(config restricted-intercept)`** on page 244 to allow you to restrict interception to a limited number of clients and servers.

`#(config proxy-services)` **`static-bypass`**
Changes the prompt to **`#(config static-bypass)`** on page 232 to allow you to manage static-bypass settings.

`#(config proxy-services)` **`view`** {**`dynamic-bypass`** | **`services`**| **`static-bypass`**}
Allows you to view proxy service parameters.

Available Service Types

You can create proxy services using the following service types:

Note: The service types listed below are not necessarily the service names you use. The syntax for creating a service type is `#(config proxy-services) create` *`service_type service_name`*, where *`service_type`* is one of those listed below and *`service_name`* is of your choosing.

- **`#(config aol-im)`** on page 233
- **`#(config dns)`** on page 235
- **`#(config endpoint-mapper)`** on page 236

- **#(config ftp)** on page 237
- **#(config http)** on page 238
- **#(config https-reverse-proxy)** on page 240
- **#(config mms)** on page 242
- **#(config msn-im)** on page 243
- **#(config rtsp)** on page 245
- **#(config socks)** on page 246
- **#(config ssl)** on page 247
- **#(config tcp-tunnel)** on page 248
- **#(config telnet)** on page 250
- **#(config yahoo-im)** on page 251

For More Information

- *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*

Example

```
#(config proxy-services) create tcp-tunnel tcp_tunnel_2
  ok
#(config proxy-services) edit tcp_tunnel_2
#(config tcp_tunnel_2)?
add                          Add a listener
attribute                    Configure service attributes
bypass                       Change a particular listener's action to bypass
exit                         Return to (config proxy-services) prompt
intercept                    Change a particular listener's action to intercept
remove                       Remove a listener
view                         Show proxy service configuration
```

#(config dynamic-bypass)

Synopsis

Dynamic bypass provides a maintenance-free method for improving performance of the SG appliance by automatically compiling a list of requested URLs that return various kinds of errors.

Syntax

```
#(config) proxy-services
#(config proxy-services) dynamic-bypass
```

The prompt changes to:

```
#(config dynamic-bypass)
```

Subcommands

`#(config dynamic-bypass)` **`clear`**
Clears all dynamic bypass entries.

`#(config dynamic-bypass)` **`disable`**
Disables dynamic bypass .

`#(config dynamic-bypass)` **`enable`**
Enables dynamic bypass.

`#(config dynamic-bypass)` **`exit`**
Exits to the `#(config proxy-services)` prompt.

`#(config dynamic-bypass)` **`max-entries`** *`number_of_entries`*
Specifies the maximum number of dynamic-bypass entries. Connections that match entries in the dynamic bypass list are not intercepted by the application proxies. Entries in the dynamic bypass list eventually time out based on the configuration. If the list grows beyond its configured size, the oldest entry is removed

`#(config dynamic-bypass)` **`no trigger`** {**`all`** | **`connect-error`** | **`non-http`** | **`receive-error`** | **`400`** | **`403`** | **`405`** | **`406`** | **`500`** | **`502`** | **`503`** | **`504`**}
Disables dynamic bypass for the specified HTTP response code, all HTTP response codes, or all non-HTTP responses. Values are specified below.

Event Value	Description
all	Enables all dynamic bypass triggers.
non-http	Enables dynamic bypass for non-HTTP responses.
connect-error	Enables dynamic bypass for any connection failure to the origin content server, including timeouts.
receive-error	Enables dynamic bypass for when a TCP connection to an origin content server succeeds, but the cache does not receive an HTTP response.
400	Enables dynamic bypass for HTTP 400 responses.
401	Enables dynamic bypass for HTTP 401 responses.
403	Enables dynamic bypass for HTTP 403 responses.
405	Enables dynamic bypass for HTTP 405 responses.
406	Enables dynamic bypass for HTTP 406 responses.

Event Value	Description
500	Enables dynamic bypass for HTTP 500 responses.
502	Enables dynamic bypass for HTTP 502 responses.
503	Enables dynamic bypass for HTTP 503 responses.
504	Enables dynamic bypass for HTTP 504 responses.

`#(config dynamic-bypass)` **`server-threshold`** *`number_of_entries`*
Specifies the number of client entries for all clients to bypass a server. Each dynamic entry can be identified by a server address or client/server address pair. A dynamic entry without a client address means the client address is a wildcard address. For example, if the server threshold is set to 10 and there are already nine dynamic entries with different client addresses for the same server address, the next time a new dynamic entry is added to the same server address but contains a different client address, the SG appliance compresses the nine dynamic entries into one dynamic entry with server address only; all clients going to that server address are bypassed.

`#(config dynamic-bypass)` **`timeout`** *`minutes`*
Sets the dynamic-bypass timeout interval in minutes.

`#(config dynamic-bypass)` **`trigger`** {**`all`** | **`connect-error`** | **`non-http`** | **`receive-error`** | **`400`** | **`403`** | **`405`** | **`406`** | **`500`** | **`502`** | **`503`** | **`504`**}
Enables dynamic bypass for the specified HTTP response code, all HTTP response codes, or all non-HTTP responses.

`#(config dynamic-bypass)` **`view`** {**`configuration`** | **`filter`** {**`*`** | **`all`** | *`client_ip_address`* | *`client_ip_address/subnet-mask`*} {**`*`** | **`all`** | *`server_ip_address`* | *`server_ip_address/subnet-mask`*}} | **`<Enter>`**}
Allows you to view the dynamic-bypass configuration or to filter the dynamic-bypass list on the parameters above.

For More Information

- *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*
- *Volume 10: Content Policy Language Guide*

Example

```
#(config) proxy-services
#(config proxy-services) dynamic-bypass
#(config dynamic-bypass) clear
 ok
#(config dynamic-bypass) enable
WARNING:
       Requests to sites that are put into the dynamic bypass list will
       bypass future policy evaluation. This could result in subversion
       of on-box policy. The use of dynamic bypass is cautioned.
 ok
#(config dynamic-bypass) trigger all
 ok
```

#(config static-bypass)

Synopsis

Static bypass prevents the SG appliance from transparently accelerating requests to servers that perform IP authentication with clients. When a request matches an IP address and subnet mask specification, the request is sent to the designated gateway without going through the SG appliance.

Syntax

```
#(config) proxy-services
#(config proxy-services) static-bypass
#(config static-bypass)
```

Subcommands

`#(config static-bypass) add {all | client_ip_address | client_ip_address/subnet-mask} {all | server_ip_address | server_ip_address/subnet-mask}`
Allows you to add a listener with the parameters you specify

`#(config static-bypass) exit`
Exits from the `#(config static-bypass)` mode and returns to the `#(config proxy-services)` mode.

`#(config static-bypass) view {filter {* | all | client_ip_address | client_ip_address/ subnet-mask} {* | all | server_ip_address | server_ip_address/ subnet-mask}} | <Enter>}`
Allows you to view static bypass entries based on the filters you specify.

For More Information

- *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*

Example

```
SGOS#(config proxy-services) static-bypass
SGOS #(config static-bypass) add 10.9.17.135 all
ok
```

#(config aol-im)

Synopsis

Enters the subcommand mode to allow you to manage a specific proxy service.

Syntax

```
#(config proxy-services) create service_type service_name
#(config proxy-services) edit service_name
```

This changes the prompt to :

```
#(config service_name)
```

Subcommands

`#(config service_name) add all {ip_address | ip_address/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port} [intercept | bypass]`
Allows you to add a listener with the parameters you specify.

`#(config service_name) attribute reflect-client-ip {disable | enable}`
Enables or disables sending of client's IP address instead of the SG's IP address.

`#(config service_name) bypass {all |ip_address | ip_address/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port}`
Changes the behavior from intercept to bypass for the listener you specify.

`#(config service_name) exit`
Exits to the `#(config proxy-services)` prompt.

`#(config service_name) intercept {all |ip_address | ip_address/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port}`
Changes the behavior from bypass to intercept for the listener you specify.

`#(config service_name) view`
Views the specified proxy service.

For More Information

- *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*

Example

```
SGOS#(config proxy-services) create aol-im aol1
SGOS#(config proxy-services) edit aol1
SGOS #(config aol1) attribute reflect-client-ip enable
ok
```

#(config cifs)

Synopsis

Enters the subcommand mode to allow you to manage a specific proxy service.

Syntax

```
#(config proxy-services) create service_type service_name
#(config proxy-services) edit service_name
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config service_name)
```

Subcommands

#(config *service_name*) add {**transparent** | *ip_address* | *ip_address/subnet-mask*} {*port* | *first_port-last_port*} [**intercept** | **bypass**]
Allows you to add a listener with the parameters you specify.

#(config *service_name*) attribute adn-optimize {**disable** | **enable**}
Controls whether to optimize bandwidth usage when connecting upstream using an ADN tunnel.

#(config *service_name*)) attribute reflect-client-ip {**disable** | **enable**}
Enables or disables sending of client's IP address instead of the SG's IP address.

#(config *service_name*) attribute use-adn {**disable** | **enable**}
Controls whether ADN is enabled for a specific service. Enabling ADN does not guarantee the connections are accelerated by ADN. The actual enable decision is determined by ADN routing (for explicit deployment) and network setup (for transparent deployment).

#(config *service_name*) bypass {**transparent** | *ip_address* | *ip_address/subnet-mask*} {*port* | *first_port-last_port*}
Change the behavior from intercept to bypass for the listener you specify.

#(config *service_name*) exit
Exits to the #(config proxy-services) prompt.

#(config *service_name*) intercept {**transparent** | *ip_address* | *ip_address/subnet-mask*} {*port* | *first_port-last_port*}
Change the behavior from bypass to intercept for the listener you specify.

#(config *service_name*) view
Views the specified proxy service.

For More Information

- *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*

Example

```
SGOS#(config proxy-services) create cifs cifs1
SGOS#(config proxy-services) edit cifs1
SGOS #(config cifs1) attribute adn-optimize enable
ok
```

#(config dns)

Synopsis

Enters the subcommand mode to allow you to manage a specific proxy service.

Syntax

```
#(config proxy-services) create service_type service_name
#(config proxy-services) edit service_name
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config service_name)
```

Subcommands

#(config *service_name*) add {**transparent** | **explicit** | **all** | *ip_address* | *ip_address/subnet-mask*} {*port* | *first_port-last_port*} [intercept | bypass]
Allows you to add a listener with the parameters you specify.

#(config *service_name*) attribute reflect-client-ip {**disable** | **enable**}
Enables or disables sending of client's IP address instead of the SG's IP address.

#(config *service_name*) bypass {**transparent** | **explicit** | **all** | *ip_address* | *ip_address/subnet-mask*} {*port* | *first_port-last_port*}
Change the behavior from intercept to bypass for the listener you specify.

#(config *service_name*) exit
Exits to the # (config proxy-services) prompt.

#(config *service_name*) intercept {**transparent** | **explicit** | **all** | *ip_address* | *ip_address/subnet-mask*} {*port* | *first_port-last_port*}
Change the behavior from bypass to intercept for the listener you specify.

#(config *service_name*) view
Views the specified proxy service.

For More Information

- *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*

Example

```
SGOS#(config proxy-services) create dns dns1
SGOS#(config proxy-services) edit dns1
SGOS #(config dns1) attribute reflect-client-ip enable
ok
```

#(config endpoint-mapper)

Synopsis

Enters the subcommand mode to allow you to manage a specific proxy service.

Syntax

```
#(config proxy-services) create service_type service_name
#(config proxy-services) edit service_name
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config service_name)
```

Subcommands

`#(config proxy-services service_name) add {all | ip_address | ip_address/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port} [intercept | bypass]`
Allows you to add a listener with the parameters you specify.

`#(config service_name) attribute adn-optimize {disable | enable}`
Controls whether to optimize bandwidth usage when connecting upstream using an ADN tunnel.

`#(config service_name) attribute reflect-client-ip {disable | enable}}`
Enables or disables sending of client's IP address instead of the SG's IP address.

`#(config service_name) attribute use-adn {disable | enable}`
Controls whether ADN is enabled for a specific service. Enabling ADN does not guarantee the connections are accelerated by ADN. The actual enable decision is determined by ADN routing (for explicit deployment) and network setup (for transparent deployment).

`#(config service_name) bypass{all | ip_address | ip_address/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port}`
Change the behavior from intercept to bypass for the listener you specify.

`#(config service_name) exit`
Exits to the `#(config proxy-services)` prompt.

`#(config service_name) intercept {all | ip_address | ip_address/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port}`
Change the behavior from bypass to intercept for the listener you specify.

`#(config service_name) view`
Views the specified proxy service.

For More Information

- *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*

Example

```
SGOS#(config proxy-services) create endpoint-mapper epmapper1
SGOS#(config proxy-services) edit epmapper1
SGOS#(config epmapper1) add all 10003
ok
```

#(config ftp)

Synopsis

Enters the subcommand mode to allow you to manage a specific proxy service.

Syntax

```
#(config proxy-services) create service_type service_name
#(config proxy-services) edit service_name
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config service_name)
```

Subcommands

`#(config service_name) add {all | ip_address | ip_address/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port} [intercept | bypass]`
Allows you to add a listener with the parameters you specify.

`#(config service_name) attribute reflect-client-ip {enable | disable}`
Enables or disables sending of client's IP address instead of the SG's IP address.

`#(config service_name) attribute adn-optimize {disable | enable}`
Controls whether to optimize bandwidth usage when connecting upstream using an ADN tunnel.

`#(config service_name) attribute use-adn {disable | enable}`
Controls whether ADN is enabled for a specific service. Enabling ADN does not guarantee the connections are accelerated by ADN. The actual enable decision is determined by ADN routing (for explicit deployment) and network setup (for transparent deployment).

`#(config service_name) bypass{all | ip_address | ip_address/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port}`
Change the behavior from intercept to bypass for the listener you specify.

`#(config service_name) exit`
Exits to the `#(config proxy-services)` prompt.

`#(config service_name) intercept {all | ip_address | ip_address/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port}`
Change the behavior from bypass to intercept for the listener you specify.

`#(config service_name) view`
Views the specified proxy service.

For More Information

- *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*

Example

```
SGOS#(config proxy-services) create ftp ftp1
SGOS#(config proxy-services) edit ftp1
SGOS #(config ftp1) intercept all 10004
ok
```

#(config http)

Synopsis

Enters the subcommand mode to allow you to manage a specific proxy service.

Syntax

```
#(config proxy-services) create service_type service_name
#(config proxy-services) edit service_name
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config service_name)
```

Subcommands

#(config *service_name*) add {**transparent** | **explicit** | **all** | *ip_address* | *ip_address/subnet-mask*} {*port* | *first_port-last_port*} [**intercept** | **bypass**]
Allows you to add a listener with the parameters you specify.

#(config *service_name*) attribute adn-optimize {**disable** | **enable**}
Controls whether to optimize bandwidth usage when connecting upstream using an ADN tunnel.

#(config *service_name*) attribute authenticate-401 {**disable** | **enable**}
All transparent and explicit requests received on the port always use transparent authentication (cookie or IP, depending on the configuration). This is especially useful to force transparent proxy authentication in some proxy-chaining scenarios.

#(config *service_name*) attribute connect (**disable** | **enable**}
This command is deprecated. Policy should be used instead. For example:

```
; To block CONNECT destined to ports other then 443
<Proxy>
  url.port=!443 http.method=CONNECT deny
```

#(config *service_name*) attribute detect-protocol {**disable** | **enable**}
Protocols that can be detected include: HTTP, P2P (eDonkey, BitTorrent, FastTrack, Gnutella), SSL, and Endpoint Mapper.

#(config *service_name*) attribute head (**disable** | **enable**}
This command is deprecated. Policy should be used instead. For example:

```
; To block HEAD methods
<Proxy>
  http.method=HEAD deny
```

#(config *service_name*) attribute reflect-client-ip {**disable** | **enable**}
Enables or disables sending of client's IP address instead of the SG's IP address.

#(config *service_name*) attribute use-adn {**disable** | **enable**}
Controls whether ADN is enabled for a specific service. Enabling ADN does not guarantee the connections are accelerated by ADN. The actual enable decision is determined by ADN routing (for explicit deployment) and network setup (for transparent deployment).

#(config *service_name*) bypass {**transparent** | **explicit** | **all** | *ip_address* | *ip_address/subnet-mask*} {*port* | *first_port-last_port*}
Change the behavior from intercept to bypass for the listener you specify.

#(config *service_name*) exit
Exits to the #(config proxy-services) prompt.

`#(config service_name) intercept {transparent | explicit | all | ip_address | ip_address/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port}`
Change the behavior from bypass to intercept for the listener you specify.

`#(config service_name) view`
Views the specified proxy service.

For More Information

- *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*

Example

```
SGOS#(config proxy-services) create http http2
SGOS#(config proxy-services) edit http2
SGOS#(config http2) attribute authenticate-401 enable
ok
```

#(config https-reverse-proxy)

Synopsis

Enters the subcommand mode to allow you to manage a specific proxy service.

Syntax

```
#(config proxy-services) create service_type service_name
#(config proxy-services) edit service_name
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config service_name)
```

Subcommands

`#(config service_name) add {transparent | explicit | all | ip_address | ip_address/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port} [intercept | bypass]`
Allows you to add a listener with the parameters specified.

`#(config service_name) attribute adn-optimize {disable | enable}`
Controls whether to optimize bandwidth usage when connecting upstream using an ADN tunnel.

`#(config service_name) attribute ccl list_name`
CA Certificate List used for verifying client certificates.

`#(config service_name) attribute cipher-suite cipher-suite+`
Allows you to specify the cipher suites you want to use with the https-reverse-proxy service.

`#(config service_name) attribute forward-client-cert {disable | enable}`
When used with the `verify-client` attribute, puts the extracted client certificate information into a header that is included in the request when it is forwarded to the OCS. The name of the header is Client-Cert. The header contains the certificate serial number, subject, validity dates and issuer (all as name=value pairs). The actual certificate is not forwarded.

`#(config service_name) attribute keyring keyring-ID`
Allows you to specify the keyring you want to use with this service.

`#(config service_name) attribute reflect-client-ip {disable | enable}}`
Enables or disables sending of client's IP address instead of the SG's IP address.

`#(config service_name) attribute use-adn {disable | enable}`
Controls whether ADN is enabled for a specific service. Enabling ADN does not guarantee the connections are accelerated by ADN. The actual enable decision is determined by ADN routing (for explicit deployment) and network setup (for transparent deployment).

`#(config service_name) attribute ssl-versions {sslv2 |sslv3 | tlsv1 | sslv2v3 | sslv2tlsv1 | sslv3tlsv1 |sslv2v3tlsv1}`
Allows you to select which versions of SSL you want to support. The default is to support SSL v2 and v3 and enable TLS.

`#(config service_name) attribute verify-client {disable | enable}`
Requests and validates the SSL client certificate.

`#(config service_name) bypass {transparent | explicit | all | ip_address | ip_address/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port}`
Changes the behavior from intercept to bypass for the listener specified.

`#(config service_name) exit`
Exits to the `#(config proxy-services)` prompt.

`#(config service_name) intercept {transparent | explicit | all | ip_address | ip_address/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port}`
Change the behavior from bypass to intercept for the listener you specify.

`#(config service_name) view`
Views the specified proxy service.

For More Information

- *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*

Example

```
SGOS#(config proxy-services) create https-reverse-proxy HTTPS_RP1
SGOS#(config proxy-services) edit HTTPS_RP1
SGOS#(config HTTPS_RP1) attribute reflect-client-ip enable
ok
```

#(config mms)

Synopsis

Enters the subcommand mode to allow you to manage a specific proxy service.

Syntax

```
#(config proxy-services) create service_type service_name
#(config proxy-services) edit service_name
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config service_name)
```

Subcommands

`#(config service_name) add {transparent | explicit | all | ip_address | ip_address/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port} [intercept | bypass]`
Allows you to add a listener with the parameters you specify.

`#(config service_name) attribute reflect-client-ip {disable | enable}`
Enables or disables sending of client's IP address instead of the SG's IP address.

`#(config service_name) bypass {transparent | explicit | all | ip_address | ip_address/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port}`
Change the behavior from intercept to bypass for the listener you specify.

`#(config service_name) exit`
Exits to the `#(config proxy-services)` prompt.

`#(config service_name) intercept {transparent | explicit | all | ip_address | ip_address/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port}`
Change the behavior from bypass to intercept for the listener you specify.

`#(config service_name) view`
Views the specified proxy service.

For More Information

- *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*

Example

```
SGOS#(config proxy-services) create mms mms1
SGOS#(config proxy-services) edit mms1
SGOS#(config mms1) attribute reflect-client-ip enable
ok
```

#(config msn-im)

Synopsis

Enters the subcommand mode to allow you to manage a specific proxy service.

Syntax

```
#(config proxy-services) create service_type service_name
#(config proxy-services) edit service_name
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config service_name)
```

Subcommands

`#(config service_name) add {all | ip_address | ip_address/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port} [intercept | bypass]`
Allows you to add a listener with the parameters you specify.

`#(config service_name) attribute reflect-client-ip {disable | enable}`
Enables or disables sending of client's IP address instead of the SG's IP address.

`#(config service_name) bypass{all | ip_address | ip_address/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port}`
Changes the behavior from intercept to bypass for the listener you specify.

`#(config service_name) exit`
Exits to the `#(config proxy-services)` prompt.

`#(config service_name) intercept{all | ip_address | ip_address/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port}`
Changes the behavior from bypass to intercept for the listener you specify.

`#(config service_name) view`
Views the specified proxy service.

For More Information

- *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*

Example

```
SGOS#(config proxy-services) create msn-im msn1
SGOS#(config proxy-services) edit msn1
SGOS#(config msn1) attribute reflect-client-ip enable
ok
```

#(config restricted-intercept)

Synopsis

By default, all clients and servers evaluate the entries in Proxy Services (**Configuration > Services > Proxy Services**) where the decision is made to intercept or bypass a connection. To restrict or reduce the clients and servers that can be intercepted by proxy services, use the restricted intercept list. The restricted intercept list is useful in a rollout, prior to full production, where you only want to intercept a subset of the clients. After you are in full production mode, the restricted intercept list can be disabled.

Enabling restricted intercept only intercepts traffic specified in the client/server list. Disabling restricted intercept results in normal interception.

Syntax

```
#(config) proxy-services
#(config proxy-services) restricted-intercept
```

The prompt changes to:

```
#(config restricted-intercept)
```

Subcommands

`#(config restricted-intercept)` {**enable** | **disable**}
Enables or disabled the restricted-intercept list.

`#(config restricted-intercept)` **add** {**all** | *client_ip* | *client_ip/subnet-mask*} | {**all**| *server_ip* | *server_ip/subnet-mask*}
Adds an entry to the restricted list, either a client or a server.

`#(config restricted-intercept)` **remove** {**all** | *client_ip* | *client_ip/subnet-mask*} | **all**| *server_ip* | *server_ip/subnet-mask*}
Clears the specified client or server from the restricted list.

`#(config restricted-intercept)` **view** {**<Enter>** | **filter** {**all** | *client_ip* | *client_ip/subnet-mask*} | {**all**| *server_ip* | *server_ip/subnet-mask*}
Allows you view the entire list or to filter on specific clients or servers.

For More Information

- *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*

Example

```
#(config) proxy-services
#(config proxy-services) restricted-intercept
#(config restricted-intercept) add all 192.168.100.1
```

#(config rtsp)

Synopsis

Enters the subcommand mode to allow you to manage a specific proxy service.

Syntax

```
#(config proxy-services) create service_type service_name
#(config proxy-services) edit service_name
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config service_name)
```

Subcommands

`#(config service_name) add {transparent | explicit | all | ip_address | ip_address/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port} [intercept | bypass]`
Allows you to add a listener with the parameters you specify.

`#(config service_name) attribute reflect-client-ip {disable | enable}`
Enables or disables sending of client's IP address instead of the SG's IP address.

`#(config service_name) bypass {transparent | explicit | all | ip_address | ip_address/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port}`
Change the behavior from intercept to bypass for the listener you specify.

`#(config service_name) exit`
Exits to the `#(config proxy-services)` prompt.

`#(config service_name) intercept {transparent | explicit | all | ip_address | ip_address/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port}`
Change the behavior from bypass to intercept for the listener you specify.

`#(config service_name) view`
Views the specified proxy service.

For More Information

- *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*

Example

```
SGOS#(config proxy-services) create rtsp rtsp1
SGOS#(config proxy-services) edit rtsp1
SGOS#(config rtsp1) attribute reflect-client-ip enable
ok
```

#(config socks)

Synopsis

Enters the subcommand mode to allow you to manage a specific proxy service.

Syntax

```
#(config proxy-services) create service_type service_name
#(config proxy-services) edit service_name
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config service_name)
```

Subcommands

#(config *service_name*) add {explicit | *ip_address* | *ip_address/subnet-mask*} {*port* | *first_port-last_port*} [intercept | bypass]
Allows you to add a listener with the parameters you specify.

#(config *service_name*) attribute adn-optimize {disable | enable}
Controls whether to optimize bandwidth usage when connecting upstream using an ADN tunnel.

#(config *service_name*) attribute detect-protocol {disable | enable}
Detects the protocol being used. Protocols that can be detected include: HTTP, P2P (eDonkey, BitTorrent, FastTrack, Gnutella), SSL, and Endpoint Mapper.

#(config *service_name*) attribute use-adn {disable | enable}
Controls whether ADN is enabled for a specific service. Enabling ADN does not guarantee the connections are accelerated by ADN. The actual enable decision is determined by ADN routing (for explicit deployment) and network setup (for transparent deployment).

#(config *service_name*) bypass {explicit | *ip_address* | *ip_address/subnet-mask*} {*port* | *first_port-last_port*}
Change the behavior from intercept to bypass for the listener you specify.

#(config *service_name*) exit
Exits to the #(config proxy-services) prompt.

#(config *service_name*) intercept {explicit | *ip_address* | *ip_address/subnet-mask*} {*port* | *first_port-last_port*}
Change the behavior from bypass to intercept for the listener you specify.

#(config *service_name*) view
Views the specified proxy service.

For More Information

- *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*

Example

```
SGOS#(config proxy-services) create socks socks1
SGOS#(config proxy-services) edit socks1
SGOS#(config socks1) attribute adn-optimize enable
ok
```

#(config ssl)

Synopsis

Enters the subcommand mode to allow you to manage a specific proxy service.

Syntax

```
#(config proxy-services) create service_type service_name
#(config proxy-services) edit service_name
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config service_name)
```

Subcommands

#(config *service_name*) add {transparent | *ip_address* | *ip_address/subnet-mask*} {*port* | *first_port-last_port*} [intercept | bypass]
Allows you to add a listener with the parameters you specify.

#(config *service_name*) attribute adn-optimize {disable | enable}
Controls whether to optimize bandwidth usage when connecting upstream using an ADN tunnel.

#(config *service_name*) attribute reflect-client-ip {disable | enable}
Enables or disables sending of client's IP address instead of the SG's IP address.

#(config *service_name*) attribute use-adn {disable | enable}
Controls whether ADN is enabled for a specific service. Enabling ADN does not guarantee the connections are accelerated by ADN. The actual enable decision is determined by ADN routing (for explicit deployment) and network setup (for transparent deployment).

#(config *service_name*) bypass{transparent | *ip_address* | *ip_address/subnet-mask*} {*port* | *first_port-last_port*}
Change the behavior from intercept to bypass for the listener you specify.

#(config *service_name*) exit
Exits to the #(config proxy-services) prompt.

#(config *service_name*) intercept {transparent | *ip_address* | *ip_address/subnet-mask*} {*port* | *first_port-last_port*}
Change the behavior from bypass to intercept for the listener you specify.

#(config *service_name*) view
Views the specified proxy service.

For More Information

- *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*

Example

```
SGOS#(config proxy-services) create ssl ssl1
SGOS#(config proxy-services) edit ssl1
SGOS#(config ssl1) add transparent 443
```

#(config tcp-tunnel)

Synopsis

Enters the subcommand mode to allow you to manage a specific proxy service.

Syntax

```
#(config proxy-services) create service_type service_name
#(config proxy-services) edit service_name
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config service_name)
```

Subcommands

#(config *service_name*) add {**transparent** | **explicit** | **all** | *ip_address* | *ip_address/subnet-mask*} {*port* | *first_port-last_port*} [**intercept** | **bypass**]
Allows you to add a listener with the parameters you specify.

#(config *service_name*) attribute adn-optimize {**disable** | **enable**}
Controls whether to optimize bandwidth usage when connecting upstream using an ADN tunnel.

#(config *service_name*) attribute detect-protocol {**disable** | **enable**}
Detects the protocol being used. Protocols that can be detected include: HTTP, P2P (eDonkey, BitTorrent, FastTrack, Gnutella), SSL, and Endpoint Mapper.

#(config *service_name*) attribute early-intercept {**disable** | **enable**}
Controls whether the proxy responds to client TCP connection requests before connecting to the upstream server. When early intercept is disabled, the proxy delays responding to the client until after it has attempted to contact the server.

#(config *service_name*) attribute reflect-client-ip {**disable** | **enable**}
Enables or disables sending of client's IP address instead of the SG's IP address.

#(config *service_name*) attribute use-adn {**disable** | **enable**}
Controls whether ADN is enabled for a specific service. Enabling ADN does not guarantee the connections are accelerated by ADN. The actual enable decision is determined by ADN routing (for explicit deployment) and network setup (for transparent deployment).

#(config *service_name*) bypass {**transparent** | **explicit** | **all** | *ip_address* | *ip_address/subnet-mask*} {*port* | *first_port-last_port*}
Change the behavior from intercept to bypass for the listener you specify.

#(config *service_name*) exit
Exits to the #(config proxy-services) prompt.

#(config *service_name*) intercept {**transparent** | **explicit** | **all** | *ip_address* | *ip_address/subnet-mask*} {*port* | *first_port-last_port*}
Change the behavior from bypass to intercept for the listener you specify.

#(config *service_name*) view
Views the specified proxy service.

For More Information

- *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*

Example

```
SGOS#(config proxy-services) create tcp-tunnel TCP1
SGOS#(config proxy-services) edit TCP1
SGOS#(config TCP1) attribute early-intercept enable
ok
```

#(config telnet)

Synopsis

Enters the subcommand mode to allow you to manage a specific proxy service.

Syntax

```
#(config proxy-services) create service_type service_name
#(config proxy-services) edit service_name
```

This changes the prompt to

```
#(config service_name)
```

Subcommands

#(config *service_name*) add {**transparent** | **explicit** | **all** | *ip_address* | *ip_address/subnet-mask*} {*port* | *first_port-last_port*} [intercept | bypass]
Allows you to add a listener with the parameters you specify.

#(config *service_name*) attribute reflect-client-ip {**disable** | **enable**}
Enables or disables sending of client's IP address instead of the SG's IP address.

#(config *service_name*) bypass {**transparent** | **explicit** | **all** | *ip_address* | *ip_address/subnet-mask*} {*port* | *first_port-last_port*}
Change the behavior from intercept to bypass for the listener you specify.

#(config *service_name*) exit
Exits to the #(config proxy-services) prompt.

#(config *service_name*) intercept {**transparent** | **explicit** | **all** | *ip_address* | *ip_address/subnet-mask*} {*port* | *first_port-last_port*}
Change the behavior from bypass to intercept for the listener you specify.

#(config *service_name*) view
Views the specified proxy service.

For More Information

- *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*

Example

```
SGOS#(config proxy-services) create telnet telnet1
SGOS#(config proxy-services) edit telnet1
SGOS #(config telnet1) view
Service Name:   telnet1
Proxy:          Telnet
Attributes:     early-intercept
Destination IP    Port Range        Action
```

#(config yahoo-im)

Synopsis

Enters the subcommand mode to allow you to manage a specific proxy service.

Syntax

```
#(config proxy-services) create service_type service_name
#(config proxy-services) edit service_name
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config service_name)
```

Subcommands

`#(config service_name) add {all | ip_address | ip_address/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port} [intercept | bypass]`
Allows you to add a listener with the parameters you specify.

`#(config service_name) attribute reflect-client-ip {disable | enable}`
Enables or disables sending of client's IP address instead of the SG's IP address.

`#(config service_name) bypass {all | ip_address | ip_address/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port}`
Changes the behavior from intercept to bypass for the listener you specify.

`#(config service_name) exit`
Exits to the `#(config proxy-services)` prompt.

`#(config service_name) intercept {all | ip_address | ip_address/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port}`
Changes the behavior from bypass to intercept for the listener you specify.

`#(config service_name) view`
Views the specified proxy service.

For More Information

- *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*

Example

```
SGOS#(config proxy-services) create yahoo-im yahoo1
SGOS#(config proxy-services) edit yahoo1
SGOS#(config yahoo1) attribute reflect-client-ip enable
ok
```

#(config) restart

Synopsis

Use this command to set restart options for the SG appliance.

Syntax

`#(config) restart core-image {context | full | keep number | none}`

context: Indicates only core image context should be written on restart.
full: Indicates full core image should be written on restart.
keep *numbers*: Specifies a number of core images to keep on restart.
none: Indicates no core image should be written on restart.

`#(config) restart mode {hardware | software}`

hardware: Specifies a hardware restart.
software: Specifies a software restart.

For More Information

- *Volume 10: Managing the Blue Coat SG Appliance*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) restart mode software
 ok
```

#(config) return-to-sender

Synopsis

The return-to-sender feature eliminates unnecessary network traffic when the three following conditions are met:

- The SG appliance has connections to clients or servers on a different subnet.
- The shortest route to the clients or servers is not through the default gateway.
- There are no static routes or RIP routes defined that apply to the IP addresses of the clients and servers.

Under these conditions, if the return-to-sender feature is enabled, the SG appliance remembers the MAC address of the last hop for a packet from the client or server and sends any responses or requests to the MAC address instead of the default gateway.

Under the same conditions, if return-to-sender is disabled, the SG appliance sends requests or responses to the default gateway, which then sends the packets to the gateway representing the last hop to the SG appliance for the associated connection. This effectively doubles the number of packets transmitted on the LAN compared to when return-to-sender is enabled.

Inbound return-to-sender affects connections initiated to the SG appliance by clients. Outbound return-to-sender affects connections initiated by the SG appliance to origin servers.

Note: Return-to-sender functionality should only be used if static routes cannot be defined for the clients and servers or if routing information for the clients and servers is not available through RIP packets.

With return-to-sender, you can use load balancing. By default, all traffic flows out of one card. If return-to-sender is enabled, traffic is returned on the card it originally came from.

Syntax

`#(config) return-to-sender inbound {disable | enable}`
Enables or disables return-to-sender for inbound sessions.

`#(config) return-to-sender outbound {disable | enable}`
Enables or disables return-to-sender for outbound sessions.

`#(config) return-to-sender version {1 | 2}`
Enables return-to-sender (RTS) versions 1 or 2.
In version 1, the RTS route is created at Layer-3 and stored globally, thus being interface agnostic. RTS version 2 was introduced to get around this multi-interface limitation. With version 2, TCP now stores a per-socket RTS route that contains both the destination MAC address and interface information. After the SYN is received by the SG appliance, all subsequent packets on that socket traverses the interface on which the SYN was received.
Note: All current sockets tied to that interface will time out. However, subsequent and existing TCP connections continue to function normally on the other interfaces.

For More Information

- *Volume 5: Advanced Networking*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) return-to-sender inbound enable
 ok
```

#(config) reveal-advanced

❒ # reveal-advanced on page 71.

#(config) rip

Synopsis

Use this command to set RIP (Routing Information Protocol) configuration options.

Using RIP, a host and router can send a routing table list of all other known hosts to its closest neighbor host every 30 seconds. The neighbor host passes this information on to its next closest neighbor and so on until all hosts have perfect knowledge of each other. (RIP uses the hop count measurement to derive network distance.) Each host in the network can then use the routing table information to determine the most efficient route for a packet.

The RIP configuration is defined in a configuration file. To configure RIP, first create a text file of RIP commands and then load the file by using the `load` command.

Syntax

`#(config)` **`rip disable`**
Disables the current RIP configuration.

`#(config)` **`rip enable`**
Enables the current RIP configuration.

`#(config)` **`rip no path`**
Clears the current RIP configuration path as determined using the `rip path` *`url`* command.

`#(config)` **`rip path`** *`url`*
Sets the path to the RIP configuration file to the URL indicated by *`url`*.

For More Information

- *Volume 5: Advanced Networking*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) rip path 10.25.36.47/files/rip.txt
 ok
```

#(config) security

The `#(config) security` command is used for security, authentication, and authorization. The security command, by itself, cannot be used. You must use `security` commands with the options discussed in Subcommands below.

Synopsis

The SG appliance provides the ability to authenticate and authorize explicit and transparent proxy users using industry-standard authentication services.

Syntax

```
#(config) security [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

Modes in the security command are divided into three categories:

- Console Access and Authorization
- Realms
- Transparent Proxy

Note: While the commands are listed in functional order below, they are discussed in alphabetical order in the pages that follow. Each of the options in blue are hyperlinked so you can go directly to the command.

Console Access and Authorization

The options in this category do not enter a new submode. These options allow you to manage passwords and usernames for the SG appliance itself.

#(config security allowed-access) on page 259
Adds or removes the specified IP address to the access control list.

#(config security default-authenticate-mode) on page 267
Sets the default `authenticate.mode` to `auto` or to `sg2`.

#(config security destroy-old-password) on page 268
Destroys recoverable passwords in configuration used by previous versions.

#(config security enable-password and hashed-enable-password) on page 269
Sets the console enable password to the password specified.

#(config security enforce-acl) on page 270
Enables or disables the console access control list.

#(config security front-panel-pin and hashed-front-panel-pin) on page 271
Sets a four-digit PIN to restrict access to the front panel of the SG appliance.

#(config security management) on page 283
Manages display settings.

#(config) security password and hashed_password on page 286
Specifies the console enable password in hashed format.

#(config) security password-display on page 287
Specifies format to display passwords in `show config` output.

#(config) security users on page 301
Manages user log ins, log outs and refresh data

#(config) security username on page 302
Specifies the console username.

Realms

Multiple authentication realms can be used on a single SG appliance. Multiple realms are essential if the enterprise is a managed provider or the company has merged with or acquired another company. Even for companies using only one protocol, multiple realms might be necessary, such as the case of a company using an LDAP server with multiple authentication boundaries. You can use realm sequencing to search the multiple realms all at one time.

Note: Up to 40 realms per type (such as certificate, authentication forms, and RADIUS) are allowed.

#(config security authentication-forms) on page 260
Creates forms for authentication and manage them.

#(config security certificate) on page 262
Creates and manages certificate realms.

#(config security coreid) on page 264
Creates and manages COREid realms.

#(config security iwa) on page 272
Creates and manages IWA realms.

#(config security ldap) on page 275
Creates and manages LDAP realms.

#(config) security local on page 279
Creates and manages local realms.

#(config security local-user-list) on page 281
Creates and manages local user lists.

#(config security novell-sso) on page 284
Creates and manages Novell SSO realms.

#(config security policy-substitution) on page 288
Creates and manage policy-substitution realms.

#(config security radius) on page 290
Creates and manages RADIUS realms.

#(config security request-storage) on page 293
Creates and manages request-storage realms.

#(config security sequence) on page 294
Creates and manages sequence realms.

#(config security siteminder) on page 296
Creates and manages SiteMinder realms.

#(config windows-sso) on page 303
Creates and manages Windows SSO realms.

#(config security xml) on page 305
Creates and manages XML realms.

Transparent Proxy

The transparent proxy authentication commands allows you

#(config) security transparent-proxy-auth on page 300
Specifies certain transparent proxy authentication settings.

For More Information

- *Volume 4: Securing the Blue Coat SG Appliance*

Example

```
#(config) show security
Account:
   Username:        "admin"
   Hashed Password: $1$a2zTlEE$1b88R3SXUTXS.zO7lh8db0
   Hashed Enable Password: $1$xQnqGerX$LU65b20trsIAF6yJox26L.
   Hashed Front Panel PIN: "$1$ThSEiB1v$seyBhSxtTXEtUGDZ5NOB1/"
   Management console display realm name: "Aurora"
   Management console auto-logout timeout: Never
Access control is disabled
Access control list (source, mask):
Flush credentials on policy update is enabled
Default authenticate.mode: auto
Transparent proxy authentication:
  Method: cookie
  Cookie type: session
  Cookie virtual-url: "www.cfauth.com/"
  IP time-to-live: 15
Local realm:
  No local realm is defined.
RADIUS realm:
  No RADIUS realm is defined.
LDAP realm(s):
  No LDAP realm is defined.
IWA realm(s):
  No IWA realm is defined.
Certificate realm(s):
  No certificate realms are defined.
SiteMinder realm(s):
  No realms defined.
COREid realm(s):
  No realms defined.
Policy-substitution realm(s):
  No realms defined.
Realm sequence(s):
  No realm sequences defined.
```

#(config security allowed-access)

Synopsis

Adds or removes IP addresses to the console access control list.

Syntax

```
#(config) security allowed-access [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

`#(config) security allowed-access add` *source_ip* [*ip_mask*]
Adds the specified IP address to the access control list.

`#(config) security allowed-access remove` *source_ip* [*ip_mask*]
Removes the specified IP from the access control list.

For More Information

- **#(config security enforce-acl) on page 270**
- *Volume 1: Getting Started*

Example

```
#(config) security allowed-access add 10.25.36.47
```

#(config security authentication-forms)

You can use forms-based authentication exceptions to control what your users see during authentication. link.

To create and put into use forms-based authentication, you must complete the following steps:

- Create a new form or edit one of the existing authentication form exceptions
- Set storage options
- Set policies

Synopsis

Allows you to create and manage authentication forms.

Syntax

```
#(config) security authentication-forms [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

`#(config) security authentication-forms copy [source_form_name target_form_name`
Changes the name of a form. Note that you cannot change the form type.

`#(config) security authentication-forms create {authentication-form | new-pin-form | query-form} form_name`
Creates a new authentication form using the form type you specify.

`#(config) security authentication-forms delete form_name`
Deletes an authentication form

`#(config) security authentication-forms inline form_name eof_marker`
Installs an authentication form from console input.

`#(config) security authentication-forms load form_name`
Downloads a new authentication form.

`#(config) security authentication-forms no path [form_name]`
Negates authentication-form configuration.

`#(config) security authentication-forms path [form_name] path`
Specifies the path (URL or IP address) from which to load an authentication form, or the entire set of authentication forms.

`#(config) security authentication-forms view`
Views the form specified or all forms.

For More Information

- **#(config security request-storage) on page 293**
- *Volume 4: Securing the Blue Coat SG Appliance*

Example

```
#(config) security authentication-forms
#(config authentication-forms) create form_type form_name
  ok
```

where *form_type* indicates the default *authentication-form, new-pin-form,* or *query-form* and *form_name* is the name you give the form.

#(config security certificate)

After an SSL session has been established, the user is asked to select the certificate to send to the SG appliance. If the certificate was signed by a Certificate Signing Authority that the SG appliance trusts, including itself, then the user is considered authenticated. The username for the user is the one extracted from the certificate during authentication.

You do not need to specify an authorization realm if:

- The policy does not make any decisions based on groups
- The policy works as desired when all certificate realm-authenticated users are not in any group

Synopsis

Allows you to create and manage certificate realms.

Syntax

```
#(config) security certificate [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

`#(config)` **`security certificate create-realm`** *`realm_name`*
Creates the specified certificate realm.

`#(config)` **`security certificate delete-realm`** *`realm_name`*
Deletes the specified certificate realm.

`#(config)` **`security certificate edit-realm`** *`realm_name`*
Changes the prompt. See Submodes for details.

`#(config)` **`security certificate view`** [*`realm_name`*]
Displays the configuration of all certificate realms or just the configuration for *`realm_name`* if specified.

Submodes

`#(config)` **`security certificate edit-realm`** *`realm_name`*

This changes the prompt to:

`#(config` *`certificate_realm`*`)`

Commands in this submode:

`#(config certificate` *`certificate_realm`*`)` **`authorization append-base-dn`** {**`disable`** | **`dn`** *`dn_to_append`* | **`enable`**}
Disables or enables appending of the base DN to the authenticated username, or specifies the base DN to append. If no base DN is specified, then the first base DN in the LDAP authorization realm is used. Applies to LDAP authorization realms only

`#(config certificate` *`certificate_realm`*`)` **`authorization container-attr-list`** *`list_of_attribute_names`*
Specifies the attributes from the certificate subject to use in constructing the user DN. E.g. “o, ou”. The list needs to be quoted if it contains spaces.

`#(config certificate` *`certificate_realm`*`)` **`authorization no`** {**`container-attr-list`** | **`realm-name`**}
Clears the container attribute list or the authorization realm.

#(config certificate *certificate_realm*) **authorization realm-name** *authorization_realm_name*
Specifies the authorization realm to use. Only LDAP and local realms are valid authorization realms.

#(config certificate *certificate_realm*) **authorization username-attribute** *username_attribute*
Specifies the attribute in the certificate subject that identifies the user's relative name. The default is "cn".

#(config certificate *certificate_realm*) **cookie** {**persistent** {**enable** | **disable**} | **verify-ip** {**enable** | **disable**}
Specifies whether to enable persistent or session cookies, and whether to verify the IP address of the cookie.

#(config certificate *certificate_realm*) **display-name** *display_name*
Specifies the display name for this realm.

#(config certificate *certificate_realm*) **exit**
Exits #(config *certificate_realm*) mode and returns to (config) mode.

#(config certificate *certificate_realm*) **inactivity-timeout** *seconds*
Specifies the amount of time a session can be inactive before being logged out.

#(config certificate *certificate_realm*) **refresh-time** {**authorization-refresh** *seconds* | **surrogate-refresh** *seconds}*
Sets the refresh time for authorization and surrogates.

#(config certificate *certificate_realm*) **rename** *new_realm_name*
Renames this realm to *new_realm_name*.

#(config certificate *certificate_realm*) **view**
Displays this realm's configuration.

#(config certificate *certificate_realm*) **virtual-url** *url*
Specifies the virtual URL to use for this realm. If no URL is specified the global transparent proxy virtual URL is used.

For More Information

- **#(config security ldap) on page 275**
- **#(config) security local on page 279**
- *Volume 4: Securing the Blue Coat SG Appliance*

Example

```
#(config) security certificate edit-realm testcert
#(config certificate testcert) no container-attr-list
 ok
#(config certificate testcert) cache-duration 800
 ok
#(config certificate testcert) exit
#(config)
```

#(config security coreid)

Within the COREid Access System, BCAAA acts as a custom AccessGate. It communicates with the COREid Access Servers to authenticate the user and to obtain a COREid session token, authorization actions, and group membership information.

Synopsis

Allows you to create and manage COREid realms.

Syntax

```
#(config) security coreid [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

`#(config)` **`security coreid create-realm`** *`realm_name`*
Creates the specified COREid realm

`#(config)` **`security coreid delete-realm`** *`realm_name`*
Deletes the specified COREid realm.

`#(config)` **`security coreid edit-realm`** *`realm_name`*
Changes the prompt. See Submodes for details.

`#(config)` **`security coreid view`** [*`realm_name`*]
Displays the configuration of all COREid realms or just the configuration for *`realm_name`* if specified.

Submodes

`#(config)` **`security coreid edit-realm`** *`realm_name`*

This changes the prompt to:

`#(config coreid` *`realm_name`*`)`

Commands in this submode:

`#(config coreid` *`realm_name`*`)` **`access-server-hostname`** *`hostname`*
The hostname of the primary Access Server.

`#(config coreid` *`realm_name`*`)` **`access-server-id`** ***`id`***
The ID of the primary Access Server.

`#(config coreid` *`realm_name`*`)` **`access-server-port`** *`port`*
The port of the primary Access Server

`#(config coreid` *`realm_name`*`)` **`add-header-responses disable`** | **`enable`**
When enabled, authorization actions from the policy domain obtained during authentication are added to each request forwarded by the SG appliance. Note that header responses replaces any existing header of the same name; if no such header exists, the header is added. Cookie responses replace a cookie header with the same cookie name; if no such cookie header exists, one is added.

`#(config coreid` *`realm_name`*`)` **`alternate-agent accessgate-id`** ***`name`***
The ID of the alternate AccessGate agent.

`#(config coreid` *`realm_name`*`)` **`alternate-agent encrypted-secret`**
`encrypted``_shared_secret`
The encrypted password associated with the alternate AccessGate. (Passwords can be up to 64 characters long and are always case sensitive.) The primary use of the encrypted-secret command is to allow the SG appliance to reload a password that it encrypted. If you choose to use a third-party encryption application, be sure it supports RSA encryption, OAEP padding, and is Base64 encoded with no newlines |

`#(config coreid realm_name)` **alternate-agent** *host hostname*
The hostname or the IP address of the alternate system that contains the agent.

`#(config coreid realm_name)` **alternate-agent port** *port*
The port where the alternate agent listens.

`#(config coreid realm_name)` **alternate-agent secret** *shared_secret*
The password associated with the alternate AccessGate. (Passwords can be up to 64 characters long and are always case sensitive.)

`#(config coreid realm_name)` **always-redirect-offbox** {**disable** | **enable**}
Forces authentication challenges to always be redirected to an off-box URL.

`#(config coreid realm_name)` `cache-duration` *seconds*
Specifies the length of time in seconds that user and administrator credentials received are cached. Credentials can be cached for up to 3932100 seconds. The default value is `900` seconds (15 minutes).

`#(config coreid realm_name)` **case-sensitive** {**disable** | **enable**}
Specifies whether the username and group comparisons on the SG appliance should be case-sensitive.

`#(config coreid realm_name)` **certificate-path** *certificate_path*
If Cert mode is used, the location on the BCAAA host machine where the key, server and CA chain certificates reside. The certificate files must be named aaa_key.pem, aaa_cert.pem and aaa_chain.pem respectively.

`#(config coreid realm_name)` **cookie** {**persistent** {**enable** | **disable**} | **verify-ip** {**enable** | **disable**}
Specifies whether to enable persistent or session cookies, and whether to verify the IP address of the cookie.

`#(config coreid realm_name)` **display-name** *display_name*
Equivalent to the display-name option in the CPL authenticate action. The default value for the display name is the realm name. The display name cannot be longer than 128 characters and it cannot be null.

`#(config coreid realm_name)` **encrypted-transport-pass-phrase** ***encrypted_pass_phrase***
If Simple or Cert mode is used, the Transport encrypted passphrase configured in the Access System.

`#(config coreid realm_name)` **exit**
Exits the `#(config coreid)` edit mode and returns to `#(config)` mode.

`#(config coreid realm_name)` **inactivity-timeout** *seconds*
Specifies the amount of time a session can be inactive before being logged out.

`#(config coreid realm_name)` **log-out** {**challenge** {**enable** | **disable**} | **display-time** *seconds*}
Allows you to challenge the user after log out and define the log out page display time.

`#(config coreid realm_name)` **no alternate-agent** | **certificate-path**
Removes the alternate agent configuration or the certificate path.

`#(config coreid realm_name)` **primary-agent accessgate-id** ***name***
The ID of the primary AccessGate agent.

`#(config coreid realm_name)` **primary-agent encrypted-secret** ***encrypted***_*shared_secret*
The encrypted password associated with the primary AccessGate. (Passwords can be up to 64 characters long and are always case sensitive.) The primary use of the encrypted-secret command is to allow the SG appliance to reload a password that it encrypted. If you choose to use a third-party encryption application, be sure it supports RSA encryption, OAEP padding, and is Base64 encoded with no newline.

`#(config coreid realm_name)` **primary-agent host** *hostname*
The hostname or the IP address of the primary system that contains the agent.

`#(config coreid realm_name)` **primary-agent port** *port*
The port where the primary agent listens.

`#(config coreid realm_name)` **primary-agent secret** *shared_secret*
The password associated with the primary AccessGate. (Passwords can be up to 64 characters long and are always case sensitive.)

`#(config coreid realm_name)` **protected-resource-name** *resource_name*
The resource name defined in the Access System policy domain

`#(config coreid realm_name)` **refresh-time** {**credential-refresh** *seconds* | **rejected-credentials-refresh** *seconds* | **surrogate-refresh** *seconds*}
Sets the refresh time for credential, rejected credentials cache, and surrogates.

`#(config coreid realm_name)` **rename** *new_realm_name*
Renames the realm to your request.

`#(config coreid realm_name)` **security-mode** {**cert** | **open** | **simple**}
The Security Transport Mode for the AccessGate to use when communicating with the Access System

`#(config coreid realm_name)` **ssl** {**disable** | **enable**}
Enable or disable SSL.

`#(config coreid realm_name)` **ssl-verify-agent** {**disable** | **enable**}
Enable or disable verification of BCAAA's certificate

`#(config coreid realm_name)` **timeout** *seconds*
The length of time to elapse before timeout if a response from BCAAA is not received.

`#(config coreid realm_name)` **transport-pass-phrase** *pass_phrase*
If Simple or Cert mode is used, the Transport passphrase configured in the Access System.

`#(config coreid realm_name)` **validate-client-IP** {**disable** | **enable**}
Enables validation of the client IP address in SSO cookies. If the client IP address in the SSO cookie can be valid yet different from the current request client IP address due to downstream proxies or other devices, then disable client IP address validation. The WebGates participating in SSO with the SG appliance should also be modified. The WebGateStatic.lst file should be modified to either set the ipvalidation parameter to false or to add the downstream proxy/device to the IPValidationExceptions lists.

`#(config coreid realm_name)` **view**
Views the realm configuration.

`#(config coreid realm_name)` **virtual-url** *url*
The URL to redirect to when the user needs to be challenged for credentials. If the SG appliance is participating in SSO, the virtual hostname must be in the same cookie domain as the other servers participating in the SSO. It cannot be an IP address or the default.

For More Information

- **#(config security siteminder) on page 296**
- *Volume 4: Securing the Blue Coat SG Appliance*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) security coreid edit-realm coreid_1
SGOS#(config coreid coreid_1) access-server-hostname AccessServer_1
SGOS#(config coreid coreid_1) cache-duration 800
SGOS#(config coreid coreid_1) exit
```

#(config security default-authenticate-mode)

Synopsis

Sets the default `authenticate.mode` to `auto` or to `sg2`.

Syntax

`#(config)` **`security default-authenticate-mode`** `[`**`auto`** | **`sg2`**`]`

Subcommands

`#(config)` **`security default-authenticate-mode auto`**
Enables the access control list.

`#(config)` **`security default-authenticate-mode sg2`**
Disables the access control list.

For More Information

- *Volume 4: Securing the Blue Coat SG Appliance*

Example

`SGOS#(config)` **`security default-authenticate-mode auto`**

#(config security destroy-old-password)

Synopsis

Destroys recoverable passwords in configuration used by previous versions.

Syntax

```
#(config) security destroy-old-password [force]
```

Subcommands

`#(config) security destroy-old-password`
Destroys passwords after prompting.

`#(config) security destroy-old-password force`
Destroys passwords without prompting.

Note: Do not use this command if you intend to downgrade, as the old passwords are destroyed.

For More Information

- *Volume 4: Securing the Blue Coat SG Appliance*

Example

```
#(config) destroy-old-password force
```

#(config security enable-password and hashed-enable-password)

Synopsis

Sets the console enable password to the password specified.

Syntax

```
#(config) security enable-password "password"
#(config) security hashed-enable-password hashed_password
```

Subcommands

`#(config) security enable-password "password"`
Note that the enable password must be in quotes. This is the password required to enter enable mode from the CLI when using console credentials, the serial console, or RSA SSH.

`#(config) security hashed-enable-password hashed_password`
The enable password in hashed format. You can either hash the password prior to entering it, or you can allow the SG appliance to hash the password.

For More Information

- *Volume 4: Securing the Blue Coat SG Appliance*

Example

```
#(config) security enable-password "test"
```

#(config security enforce-acl)

Synopsis

Enables or disables the console access control list (ACL).

Syntax

```
#(config) security enforce-acl [enable | disable]
```

Subcommands

`#(config) security enforce-acl enable`
Enables the access control list.

`#(config) security enforce-acl disable`
Disables the access control list.

For More Information

- `#(config) alert` on page 103

Example

```
#(config) security enforce-acl disable
```

#(config security front-panel-pin and hashed-front-panel-pin)

Synopsis

Sets a four-digit PIN to restrict access to the front panel of the SG appliance.

Syntax

```
#(config) security front-panel-pin PIN
```

Subcommands

```
#(config) security front-panel-pin PIN
```
Use of this command is recommended for security reasons.

Note: To clear the PIN, specify 0000.

For More Information

- *Volume 4: Securing the Blue Coat SG Appliance*

Example

```
#(config) security front-panel-pin 1234
```

#(config security iwa)

Integrated Windows Authentication (IWA) is an authentication mechanism available on Windows networks. (The name of the realm has been changed from NTLM to IWA.)

IWA is a Microsoft-proprietary authentication suite that allows Windows clients (running on Windows 2000 and higher) to automatically choose between using Kerberos and NTLM authentication challenge/response, as appropriate. When an IWA realm is used and a resource is requested by the client from the SG appliance, the appliance contacts the client's domain account to verify the client's identity and request an access token. The access token is generated by the domain controller (in case of NTLM authentication) or a Kerberos server (in the case of Kerberos authentication) and passed to (and if valid, accepted by) the SG appliance.

Refer to the Microsoft Web site for detailed information about the IWA protocol.

Synopsis

Allows you to create and manage IWA realms.

Syntax

```
#(config) security iwa [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

```
#(config) security iwa create-realm realm_name
```
Creates the specified IWA realm.

```
#(config) security iwa delete-realm realm_name
```
Deletes the specified IWA realm.

```
#(config) security iwa edit-realm realm_name
```
Changes the prompt. See Submodes for details.

```
#(config) security iwa view [realm_name]
```
Displays the configuration of all IWA realms or just the configuration for *realm_name* if specified.

Submodes

```
#(config) security IWA edit-realm realm_name
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config IWA realm_name)
```

Commands in this submode:

```
#(config IWA realm_name) alternate-server host [port]
```
Specifies the alternate server host and port.

```
#(config IWA realm_name) cache-duration seconds
```
Specifies the length of time to cache credentials for this realm.

```
#(config IWA realm_name) cookie {persistent {enable | disable} | verify-ip {enable | disable}
```
Specifies whether to enable persistent or session cookies, and whether to verify the IP address of the cookie.

```
#(config IWA realm_name) credentials-basic {disable | enable}
```
Disables/enables support for Basic credentials in this realm. At least one of Basic or NTLM/Kerberos credentials must be supported.

`#(config IWA realm_name)` **`credentials-kerberos`** {**`disable`** | **`enable`**}
Disables/enables support for Kerberos credentials in this realm. If Kerberos is enabled, NTLM must also be enabled. At least one of Basic or NTLM/Kerberos credentials must be supported.

`#(config IWA realm_name)` **`credentials-ntlm`** {**`disable`** | **`enable`**}
Disables/enables support for NTLM credentials in this realm. If NTLM is enabled, Kerberos must also be enabled. At least one of Basic or NTLM/Kerberos credentials must be enabled.

`#(config IWA realm_name)` **`display-name`** *`display_name`*
Specifies the display name for this realm.

`#(config IWA realm_name)` **`exit`**
Exits the `iwa edit` mode and returns to (`config`) mode.

`#(config IWA realm_name)` **`inactivity-timeout`** *`seconds`*
Specifies the amount of time a session can be inactive before being logged out.

`#(config IWA realm_name)` **`log-out`** {**`challenge`** {**`enable`** | **`disable`**} | **`display-time`** *`seconds`*}
Allows you to challenge the user after log out and define the log out page display time.

`#(config IWA realm_name)` **`no alternate-server`**
Clears the alternate-server.

`#(config IWA realm_name)` **`primary-server`** *`host`* [*`port`*]
Specifies the primary server host and port.

`#(config IWA realm_name)` **`refresh-time`** {**`credential-refresh`** *`seconds`* | **`rejected-credentials-refresh`** *`seconds`* | **`surrogate-refresh`** *`seconds`*}
Sets the refresh time for credential, rejected credentials cache time, and surrogates.

`#(config IWA realm_name)` **`rename`** *`new_realm_name`*
Renames this realm to *`new_realm_name`*.

`#(config IWA realm_name)` **`spoof-authentication`** {**`none`** | **`origin`** | **`proxy`**}
Enables/disables the forwarding of authenticated credentials to the origin content server or for proxy authentication. Flush the entries for a realm if the spoof-authentication value is changed to ensure that the spoof-authentication value is immediately applied.

You can only choose one.

- If set to **`origin`**, the spoofed header is an Authorization: header.
- If set to **`proxy`**, the spoofed header is a Proxy-Authorization: header.
- If set to **`none`**, no spoofing is done.

`#(config IWA realm_name)` **`ssl`** {**`disable`** | **`enable`**}
Disables/enables SSL communication between the SG appliance and BCAAA.

`#(config IWA realm_name)` **`ssl-verify-server`** {**`disable`** | **`enable`**}
Specifies whether or not to verify the BCAAA certificate.

`#(config IWA realm_name)` **`timeout`** *`seconds`*
Specifies the IWA request timeout.

`#(config IWA realm_name)` **`view`**
Displays this realm's configuration.

`#(config IWA realm_name)` **`virtual-url`** *`url`*
Specifies the virtual URL to use for this realm. If no URL is specified the global transparent proxy virtual URL is used.

For More Information

- *Volume 4: Securing the Blue Coat SG Appliance*

Example

```
#(config) security IWA edit-realm testIWA
#(config IWA testIWA) cache-duration 1500
 ok
#(config IWA testIWA) no alternate server
 ok
#(config IWA testIWA) exit
#(config)
```

#(config security ldap)

Blue Coat supports both LDAP v2 and LDAP v3, but recommends LDAP v3 because it uses Transport Layer Security (TLS) and SSL to provide a secure connection between the SG appliance and the LDAP server.

An LDAP directory, either version 2 or version 3, consists of a simple tree hierarchy. An LDAP directory might span multiple LDAP servers. In LDAP v3, servers can return referrals to others servers back to the client, allowing the client to follow those referrals if desired.

Directory services simplify administration; any additions or changes made once to the information in the directory are immediately available to all users and directory-enabled applications, devices, and SG appliances.

The SG appliance supports the use of external LDAP database servers to authenticate and authorize users on a per-group or per-attribute basis.

LDAP group-based authentication for the SG appliance can be configured to support any LDAP-compliant directory including:

- Microsoft Active Directory Server
- Novell NDS/eDirectory Server
- Netscape/Sun iPlanet Directory Server
- Other

Synopsis

Allows you to configure and manage LDAP realms.

Syntax

```
#(config) security ldap [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

```
#(config) security ldap create-realm realm_name
```
Creates the specified LDAP realm

```
#(config) security ldap delete-realm realm_name
```
Deletes the specified LDAP realm.

```
#(config) security ldap edit-realm realm_name
```
Changes the prompt. See Submodes for details.

```
#(config) security ldap view [realm_name]
```
Displays the configuration of all LDAP realms or just the configuration for *realm_name* if specified.

Submodes

```
#(config) security ldap edit-realm realm_name
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config ldap realm_name)
```

Commands in the `ldap realm_name` mode:

```
#(config ldap realm_name) alternate-server host [port]
```
Specifies the alternate server host and port.

```
#(config ldap realm_name) case-sensitive {disable | enable}
```
Specifies whether or not the LDAP server is case-sensitive.

`#(config ldap realm_name)` **`cookie`** {**`persistent`** {**`enable`** | **`disable`**} | **`verify-ip`** {**`enable`** | **`disable`**}

Specifies whether to enable persistent or session cookies, and whether to verify the IP address of the cookie.

`#(config ldap realm_name)` **`default-group-name`** *`default_group_name`*

If the `validate-authorized-user` command is disabled and a default-group-name is configured, the default-group-name is used as the group name for non-existent users.

`#(config ldap realm_name)` **`display-name`** *`display_name`*

Specifies the display name for this realm.

`#(config ldap realm_name)` **`distinguished-name user-attribute-type`** *`user_attribute_type`*

Specifies the attribute type that defines the relative user name.

`#(config ldap realm_name)` **`distinguished-name base-dn`** {**`add`** | **`demote`** | **`promote`** | **`remove`**} {*`base_dn`* | **`clear`**}

Adds/demotes/promotes/removes a base DN from the base DN list, or clears the base DN list.

`#(config ldap realm_name)` **`exit`**

Exits the `ldap edit` mode and returns to `#(config)` mode.

`#(config ldap realm_name)` **`inactivity-timeout`** *`seconds`*

Specifies the amount of time a session can be inactive before being logged out.

`#(config ldap realm_name)` **`log-out`** {**`challenge`** {**`enable`** | **`disable`**} | **`display-time`** *`seconds`*}

Allows you to challenge the user after log out and define the log out page display time.

`#(config ldap realm_name)` **`membership-attribute`** *`attribute_name`*

Specifies the attribute that defines group membership.

`#(config ldap realm_name)` **`membership-type`** {**`group`** | **`user`**}

Specifies the membership type. Specify group if user memberships are specified in groups. Specify user if memberships are specified in users.

`#(config ldap realm_name)` **`membership-username (full`** | **`relative)`**

Specifies the username type to use during membership lookups. The `full` option specifies that the user's FQDN is used during membership lookups, and `relative` option specifies that the user's relative username is used during membership lookups. Only one can be selected at a time.

`#(config ldap realm_name)` **`nested-group-attribute`** *`attribute_name`*

Specifies the attribute that defines nested group membership. For **other**, **ad,** and **nds**, the default attribute name is **`member`**. For **iPlanet**, the default attribute name is **`uniqueMember.`**

`#(config ldap realm_name)` **`no alternate-server`**

Clears the alternate-server or membership-attribute values.

`#(config ldap realm_name)` **`no default-group-name`**

Clears the default group name.

`#(config ldap realm_name)` **`no membership-attribute`**

Clears the membership-attribute values.

`#(config ldap realm_name)` **`objectclass container`** {**`add`** | **`remove`**} {*`container_objectclass`* | **`clear`**}

Adds/removes container objectclass values from the list (these values are used during VPM searches of the LDAP realm), or clears all values from the container objectclass list.

`#(config ldap realm_name)` **`objectclass group`** {**`add`** | **`remove`**} {*`group_objectclass`* | **`clear`**}

Adds/removes group objectclass values from the list (these values are used during VPM searches of the LDAP realm), or clears all values from the group objectclass list.

#(config ldap *realm_name*) **objectclass user** {**add** | **remove**} {*user_objectclass* | **clear**}
Adds/removes user objectclass values from the list (these values are used during VPM searches of the LDAP realm), or clears all values from the user objectclass list.

#(config ldap *realm_name*) **primary-server** *host* [*port*]
Specifies the primary server host and port.

#(config ldap *realm_name*) **protocol-version** {**2** | **3**}
Specifies the LDAP version to use. SSL and referral processing are not available in LDAP v2.

#(config ldap *realm_name*) **referrals-follow** {**disable** | **enable**}
Disables/enables referral processing. This is available in LDAP v3 only.

#(config ldap *realm_name*) **refresh-time** {**authorization-refresh** *seconds* | **credential-refresh** *seconds* | **rejected-credentials-refresh** *seconds* | **surrogate-refresh** *seconds*}
Sets the refresh time for authorization, credential, rejected credentials cache, and surrogates.

#(config ldap *realm_name*) **rename** *new_realm_name*
Renames this realm to *new_realm_name*.

#(config ldap *realm_name*) **search anonymous** {**disable** | **enable**}
Disables/enables anonymous searches.

#(config ldap *realm_name*) **search dereference** {**always** | **finding** | **never** | **searching**}
Specifies the dereference level. Specify always to always dereference aliases. Specify finding to dereference aliases only while locating the base of the search. Specify searching to dereference aliases only after locating the base of the search. Specify never to never dereference aliases.

#(config ldap *realm_name*) **search encrypted-password** *encrypted_password*
Specifies the password to bind with during searches in encrypted format.

#(config ldap *realm_name*) **search password** *password*
Specifies the password to bind with during searches.

#(config ldap *realm_name*) **search user-dn** *user_dn*
Specifies the user DN to bind with during searches.

#(config ldap *realm_name*) **server-type** {**ad** | **iplanet** | **nds** | **other**}
Specifies the LDAP server type for this realm.

#(config ldap *realm_name*) **spoof-authentication** {**none** | **origin** | **proxy**}
Enables/disables the forwarding of authenticated credentials to the origin content server or for proxy authentication. Flush the entries for a realm if the spoof-authentication value is changed to ensure that the spoof-authentication value is immediately applied.

You can only choose one.

- If set to **origin**, the spoofed header is an Authorization: header.
- If set to **proxy**, the spoofed header is a Proxy-Authorization: header.
- If set to **none**, no spoofing is done.

#(config ldap *realm_name*) **ssl** {**disable** | **enable**}
Disables/enables SSL communication between the SG appliance and the LDAP server. This is only available in LDAP v3.

#(config ldap *realm_name*) **ssl-verify-server** {**disable** | **enable**}
Specifies whether or not to verify the LDAP server's certificate.

#(config ldap *realm_name*) **support-nested-groups** {**disable** | **enable**}
Enables or disables the nested group feature.

`#(config ldap` *realm_name*`)` **`timeout`** *seconds*
Specifies the LDAP server's timeout.

`#(config ldap` *realm_name*`)` **`validate-authorized-user`** {**`enable`** | **`disable`**}
When `validate-authorized-user` is enabled, an **`authorization`** (not authentication) request verifies that the user exists in the LDAP server. If the user does not exist, the authorization request fails (authentication requests always require the user to exist).

When `validate-authorized-user` is disabled, no user existence check is made for an authorization request. If the user does not exist, the authorization request succeeds

`#(config ldap` *realm_name*`)` **`view`**
Displays this realm's configuration.

`#(config ldap` *realm_name*`)` **`virtual-url`** *url*
Specifies the virtual URL to use for this realm. If no URL is specified the global transparent proxy virtual URL is used.

For More Information

- *Volume 4: Securing the Blue Coat SG Appliance*

Example

```
#(config) security ldap edit-realm testldap
#(config ldap testldap) server-type iplanet
 ok
#(config ldap testldap) spoof-authentication origin
 ok
#(config ldap testldap) exit
```

#(config) security local

Using a Local realm is appropriate when the network topography does not include external authentication or when you want to add users and administrators to be used by the SG appliance only.

The Local realm (you can create up to 40) uses a *Local User List*, a collection of users and groups stored locally on the SG appliance. You can create up to 50 different Local User Lists. Multiple Local realms can reference the same list at the same time, although each realm can only reference one list at a time. The default list used by the realm can be changed at any time.

Synopsis

Allows you to configure and manage local realms.

Syntax

```
#(config) security local [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

`#(config)` **`security local create-realm`** *`realm_name`*
Creates the specified local realm.

`#(config)` **`security local delete-realm`** *`realm_name`*
Deletes the specified local realm.

`#(config)` **`security local edit-realm`** *`realm_name`*
Changes the prompt. See Submodes for details.

`#(config)` **`security local view`** [*`realm_name`*]
Displays the configuration of all local realms or just the configuration for *`realm_name`* if specified.

Submodes

```
#(config) security local edit-realm realm_name
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config local realm_name)
```

Commands found in this submode include:

`#(config local` *`realm_name`*`)` **`cache-duration`** *`seconds`*
Specifies the length of time to cache credentials for this realm.

`#(config local` *`realm_name`*`)` **`cookie`** {**`persistent`** {**`enable`** | **`disable`**} | **`verify-ip`** {**`enable`** | **`disable`**}
Specifies whether to enable persistent or session cookies, and whether to verify the IP address of the cookie.

`#(config local` *`realm_name`*`)` **`default-group-name`** *`default_group_name`*
If the `validate-authorized-user` command is disabled and a default-group-name is configured, the default-group-name is used as the group name for non-existent users.

`#(config local` *`realm_name`*`)` **`display-name`** *`display_name`*
Specifies the display name for this realm.

`#(config local` *`realm_name`*`)` **`exit`**
Exits configure security local mode and returns to `#(config)` mode.

`#(config local` *`realm_name`*`)` **`refresh-time`** {**`authorization-refresh`** *`seconds`* | **`surrogate-refresh`** *`seconds`*}
Sets the refresh time for authorization and surrogates.

`#(config local realm_name) inactivity-timeout seconds`
Specifies the amount of time a session can be inactive before being logged out.

`#(config local realm_name) local-user-list local_user_list_name`
Specifies the local user list to for this realm.

`#(config local realm_name) no default-group-name`
Clears the default group name.

`#(config local realm_name) rename new_realm_name`
Renames this realm to *new_realm_name*

`#(config local realm_name) spoof-authentication {none | origin | proxy}`
Enables/disables the forwarding of authenticated credentials to the origin content server or for proxy authentication. You can only choose one.

- If set to **origin**, the spoofed header is an Authorization: header.
- If set to **proxy**, the spoofed header is a Proxy-Authorization: header.
- If set to **none**, no spoofing is done.

Flush the entries for a realm if the spoof-authentication value is changed to ensure that the spoof-authentication value is immediately applied.

`#(config local realm_name) validate-authorized-user {disable | enable}`
When `validate-authorized-user` is enabled, an **authorization** (not authentication) request verifies that the user exists in the local user list. If the user does not exist in the list, the authorization request fails (authentication requests always require the user to exist).

When `validate-authorized-user` is disabled, no user existence check is made for an authorization request. If the user does not exist, the authorization request succeeds.

`#(config local realm_name) view`
Displays this realm's configuration

`#(config local realm_name) virtual-url url`
Specifies the virtual URL to use for this realm. If no URL is specified the global transparent proxy virtual URL is used.

For More Information

- **#(config security local-user-list) on page 281**
- *Volume 4: Securing the Blue Coat SG Appliance*

Example

```
#(config) security local edit-realm testlocal
#(config local testlocal) cache-duration 1500
 ok
#(config local testlocal) spoof-authentication proxy
 ok
#(config local testlocal) exit
#(config)
```

#(config security local-user-list)

The local-user-list is only used in conjunction with local realms.

Synopsis

Manages the local-user-list used in local realms.

Syntax

`#(config) **security local-user-list** [*subcommands*]`

Subcommands

`#(config) **security local-user-list clear** [**force**]`
Clears all local user lists. Lists referenced by local realms and the default local user list are recreated but empty. Specify force to clear realms without a prompt for confirmation.

`#(config) **security local-user-list create** *local-user-list*`
Creates the local user list with the name specified

`#(config) **security local-user-list default append-to-default** {**disable** | **enable**}`
Disables/enables appending uploaded users to the default local user list.

`#(config) **security local-user-list default list** *local_user_list*`
Specifies the default local user list. The default list is populated during password file uploads. The default list is also the default list used by local realms when they are created

`#(config) **security local-user-list delete** ***local-user-list*** [**force**]`
Deletes the specified local user list. The default list and any lists used by local realms cannot be deleted. Specify `force` to delete the list without a prompt for confirmation.

`#(config) **security local-user-list edit** ***local-user-list***`
Changes the prompt. See Submodes.

Submodes

`#(config) **security local-user-list edit** *local_user_list*`

This changes the prompt to:

`#(config local-user-list *local_user_list*)`

Commands found in this submode include:

`#(config local-user-list *local_user_list*) **disable-all**`
Disables all user accounts in the specified list.

`#(config local-user-list *local_user_list*) **enable-all**`
Enables all user accounts in the specified list.

`#(config local-user-list *local_user_list*) **exit**`
Exits configure local-user-list mode and returns to configure mode.

`#(config local-user-list *local_user_list*) **group clear**`
Clears all groups from the list. The users remain but do not belong to any groups.

`#(config local-user-list *local_user_list*) **group create** ***group_name***`
Creates the specified group in the local user list.

`#(config local-user-list *local_user_list*) **group delete** ***group_name*** [**force**]`
Deletes the specified group in the local user list.

`#(config local-user-list *local_user_list*) **lockout-duration** *seconds*`
The length of time a user account is locked out after too many failed password attempts. The default is 3600

`#(config local-user-list` *`local_user_list`*`)` **`max-failed-attempts`** ***`attempts`***
The number of failed attempts to login to an SG appliance before the user account is locked. The default is 60 attempts.

`#(config local-user-list` *`local_user_list`*`)` **`no`** [**`lockout-duration`** | **`max-failed-attempts`** | **`reset-interval`**]
Disables the settings for this user list.

`#(config local-user-list` *`local_user_list`*`)` **`reset-interval`** *`seconds`*
The length of seconds to wait after the last failed attempt before resetting the failed counter to zero.

`#(config local-user-list` *`local_user_list`*`)` **`user clear`**
Clears all users from the list. The groups remain but do not have any users.

`#(config local-user-list` *`local_user_list`*`)` **`user create`** ***`user_name`***
Creates the specified user in the local user list.

`#(config local-user-list` *`local_user_list`*`)` **`user delete`** ***`user_name`*** [**`force`**]
Deletes the specified user in the local user list.

`#(config local-user-list` *`local_user_list`*`)` **`user edit`** ***`user_name`***
changes the prompt to `#(config local-user-list` *`local_user_list user_name`*`)`
Edits the specified user in the local user list.

`#(config local-user-list` *`local_user_list user_name`*`)` {**`disable`** | **`enable`**}
Disables/enables the user account.

`#(config local-user-list` *`local_user_list user_name`*`)` **`exit`**
Exits configure local-user-list *`user_list`* mode and returns to configure local-user-list mode.

`#(config local-user-list` *`local_user_list user_name`*`)` **`group`** {**`add`** | **`remove`**} ***`group_name`***
Adds/removes the specified group from the user.

`#(config local-user-list` *`local_user_list user_name`*`)` **`hashed-password`** *`hashed_password`*
Specifies the user's password in hashed format.

`#(config local-user-list` *`local_user_list user_name`*`)` **`password`** *`password`*
Specifies the user's password.

`#(config local-user-list` *`local_user_list user_name`*`)` **`view`**
Displays the user account.

`#(config local-user-list` *`local_user_list`*`)` **`view`**
Displays all users and groups in the local user list.

For More Information

- **`#(config) security local on page 279`**
- *Volume 4: Securing the Blue Coat SG Appliance*

Example

```
#(config) security local-user-list edit testlul
#(config local-user-list testlul) user create testuser
 ok
#(config local-user-list testlul) user edit testuser
#(config local-user-list testlul testuser) enable
 ok
#(config local-user-list testlul testuser) exit
#(config local-user-list testlul) exit
#(config)
```

#(config security management)

Synopsis

Manages the automatic logging out of a user and sets the name of realm in the management console challenge.

Syntax

```
#(config) security management [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

`#(config)` **`security management auto-logout-timeout`** *`seconds`*
Specifies the length of a management console session before the administrator is required to re-enter credentials. The default is 900 seconds (15 minutes). Acceptable values are between `300` and `86400` seconds (5 minutes to 24 hours).

`#(config)` **`security management display-realm`** *`realm_name`*
Specifies the realm to display in the management console challenge. The default value is the IP address of the SG appliance.

`#(config)` **`security management no auto-logout-timeout`**
Disables the automatic session logout.

`#(config)` **`security management no display-realm`**
Resets the display realm to be the IP address of the SG appliance.

For More Information

- *Volume 1: Getting Started*

Example

```
#(config) security management auto-logout-timeout seconds
```

#(config security novell-sso)

Synopsis

Allows you to configure and manage Novell SSO realms.

Syntax

`#(config) security novell-sso [subcommands]`

Subcommands

`#(config) security novell-sso create-realm realm_name`
Creates the specified Novell SSO realm.

`#(config) security novell-sso delete-realm realm_name`
Deletes the specified Novell SSO realm.

`#(config) security novell-sso edit-realm realm_name`
Changes the prompt. See Submodes for details.

`#(config) security novell-sso view [realm_name]`
Displays the configuration of all Novell SSO realms or just the configuration for *realm_name* if specified.

Submodes

`#(config) security novell-sso edit-realm realm_name`

This changes the prompt to:

`#(config novell-sso realm_name)`

Commands found in this submode include:

`SGOS#(config novell-sso realm_name) alternate-agent {host hostname | port port_number}`
Specifies the alternate agent hostname and port number.

`SGOS#(config novell-sso realm_name) authorization {realm-name authorization-realm-name | username username | no {authorization-realm-name | username} | self}`
Specifies the realm name, which can be **self**, and username for authorization. **No** clears the realm and username.

`SGOS#(config novell-sso realm_name) cookie {persistent {disable | enable}| verify-ip {disable | enable}}`
Specifies whether to enable persistent or session cookies, and whether to verify the IP address of the cookie.

`SGOS#(config novell-sso realm_name) exit`
Leaves the `novell-sso` edit-realm mode.

`SGOS#(config novell-sso realm_name) full-search {day-of-week | time-of-day}`
Specifies the day of the week for full searches to occurs and the time of the day (UTC time) to search.

`SGOS#(config novell-sso realm_name) inactivity-timeout seconds`
Specifies the amount of time a session can be inactive before being logged out.

`SGOS#(config novell-sso realm_name) ldap monitor-server {add LDAP_host [LDAP_port]| clear | remove LDAP_host [LDAP_port]}`
Add an LDAP host to list of servers to be monitored, clear the list, or remove a specific LDAP host from the list of servers to be monitored.

`SGOS#(config novell-sso realm_name)` **ldap search-realm** *ldap_realm*
Specifies the name of the realm to search and monitor.

`SGOS#(config novell-sso realm_name)` **ldap-name** {**login-time** *LDAP_name* | **network-address** *LDAP_name*}
Specifies the name of the LDAP server for Novell directory attributes.

`SGOS#(config novell-sso realm_name)` **no alternate-agent**
Removes the alternate agent.

`SGOS#(config novell-sso realm_name)` **primary-agent** {**host** *hostname* | **port** *port_number*}
Specifies the primary agent hostname and port number.

`SGOS#(config novell-sso realm_name)` **refresh-time** {**authorization-refresh** *seconds* | **surrogate-refresh** *seconds*}
Sets the refresh time for authorization and surrogates.

`SGOS#(config novell-sso realm_name)` **rename** *new_realm_name*
Renames the current realm to *new_realm_name*.

`SGOS#(config novell-sso realm_name)` **ssl** {**enable** | **disable**}
Enables or disables SSL between the SG appliance and the BCAAA service.

`SGOS#(config novell-sso realm_name)` **ssl-verify-agent** {**enable** | **disable**}
Enables or disables verification of the BCAAA certificate. By default, if SSL is enabled, the Novell SSO BCAAA certificate is verified.

`SGOS#(config novell-sso realm_name)` **timeout** *seconds*
The time allotted for each request attempt. The default is 60 seconds.

`SGOS#(config novell-sso realm_name)` **view**
Displays this realm's configuration.

`SGOS#(config novell-sso realm_name)` **virtual-url** *url*
Specifies the virtual URL to use for this realm. If no URL is specified the global transparent proxy virtual URL is used.

#(config) security password and hashed_password

Synopsis

Sets the console password to the password specified.

Syntax

```
#(config) security password "password"
#(config) security password hashed-password hashed_password
```

Subcommands

`#(config) security password "password"`
Note that the password must be in quotes. This is the password required to enter enable mode from the CLI when using console credentials, the serial console, or RSA SSH.

`#(config) security hashed-password hashed_password`
The password in hashed format. You can either hash the password prior to entering it, or you can allow the SG appliance to hash the password.

For More Information

- *Volume 4: Securing the Blue Coat SG Appliance*

Example

```
#(config) security password "good2test"
```

#(config) security password-display

Synopsis

Sets various display settings.

Syntax

```
#(config) security password-display [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

`#(config) security password-display {encrypted | none}`
Specifies the format to display passwords in `show config` output. Specify `encrypted` to display encrypted passwords. Specify `none` to display no passwords.

`#(config) security password-display keyring`
Specifies the keyring to use for password encryption.

`#(config) security password-display view`
Displays the current password display settings.

For More Information

- *Volume 4: Securing the Blue Coat SG Appliance*

Example

```
#(config) security password-display view
Password display mode: Encrypted
Password encryption keyring: configuration-passwords-key
```

#(config security policy-substitution)

A Policy Substitution realm provides a mechanism for identifying and authorizing users based on information in the request to the SG appliance. The realm uses information in the request and about the client to identify the user. The realm is configured to construct user identity information by using policy substitutions.

The Policy Substitution realm is used typically for best-effort user discovery, mainly for logging and subsequent reporting purposes, without the need to authenticate the user. Be aware that if you use Policy Substitution realms to provide granular policy on a user, it might not be very secure because the information used to identify the user can be forged.

Synopsis

Allows you to create and manage policy-substitution realms.

Syntax

`#(config)` **`security polity-substitution`** [*`subcommands`*]

Subcommands

`#(config)` **`security polity-substitution create-realm`** *`realm_name`*
Creates the specified policy-substitution realm

`#(config)` **`security polity-substitution delete-realm`** *`realm_name`*
Deletes the specified policy-substitution realm.

`#(config)` **`security polity-substitution edit-realm`** *`realm_name`*
Changes the prompt. See Submodes for details.

`#(config)` **`security polity-substitution view`** [*`realm_name`*]
Displays the configuration of all policy-substitution realms or just the configuration for *`realm_name`* if specified.

Submodes

`#(config)` **`security policy-substitution edit-realm`** *`realm_name`*

This changes the prompt to:

`#(config policy-substitution` *`realm_name`*`)`

Commands found in this submode include:

`#(config policy-substitution` *`realm_name`*`)` **`authorization-realm-name`** *`realm_name`*
This option is only required if you are associating an authorization realm with the Policy Substitution realm.

`#(config policy-substitution` *`realm_name`*`)` **`cookie`** {**`persistent`** {**`disable`** | **`enable`**}|
`verify-ip` {**`disable`** | **`enable`**}}
Specifies whether to enable persistent or session cookies, and whether to verify the IP address of the cookie.

`#(config policy-substitution` *`realm_name`*`)` **`exit`**
Leaves the windows-sso edit-realm mode.

`#(config policy-substitution` *`realm_name`*`)` **`full-username`** *`construction_rule`*
The full username as created through policy substitutions. The construction rule is made up any of the substitutions whose values are available at client logon, listed in Appendix D, “CPL Substitutions,” in *Volume 10: Content Policy Language Guide*.

Note: The username and full username attributes are character strings that contain policy substitutions. When authentication is required for the transaction, these character strings are processed by the policy substitution mechanism, using the current transaction as input. The resulting string is stored in the user object in the transaction, and becomes the user's identity.

To create full usernames for various uses in Policy Substitution realms, refer to *Volume 10: Content Policy Language Guide*.

`#(config policy-substitution realm_name) inactivity-timeout seconds`
Specifies the amount of time a session can be inactive before being logged out.

`#(config policy-substitution realm_name) no authorization-realm-name`
Clears the authorization realm name.

`#(config policy-substitution realm_name) refresh-time {authorization-refresh seconds | surrogate-refresh seconds}`
Sets the refresh time for authorization and surrogates.

`#(config policy-substitution realm_name) rename new_realm_name`
Renames this realm to *new_realm_name*.

`#(config policy-substitution realm_name) username construction_rule`
The username as created through policy substitutions. Note that the username is only required if you are using an authorization realm. The construction rule is made up any of the policy substitutions whose values are available at client logon, listed in Appendix D, "CPL Substitutions," in *Volume 10: Content Policy Language Guide*.

Note: The username and full username attributes are character strings that contain policy substitutions. When authentication is required for the transaction, these character strings are processed by the policy substitution mechanism, using the current transaction as input. The resulting string is stored in the user object in the transaction, and becomes the user's identity.

To create usernames for the various uses of Policy Substitution realms, refer to *Volume 10: Content Policy Language Guide*

`#(config policy-substitution realm_name) view`
Displays this realm's configuration.

`#(config policy-substitution realm_name) virtual-url url`
Specifies the virtual URL to use for this realm. If no URL is specified the global transparent proxy virtual URL is used.

For More Information

- *Volume 8: Access Logging*
- *Volume 10: Content Policy Language Guide*

Example

```
#(config) security policy-substitution edit-realm PS1
#(config policy-substitution PS1) authorization-realm-name LDAP1
#(config policy-substitution PS1) username $(netbios.messenger-username)
#(config policy-substitution PS1) full-username
cn=$(netbios.messenger-username),cn=users,dc=$(netbios.computer-domain),
dc=company,dc=com
```

#(config security radius)

RADIUS is often the protocol of choice for ISPs or enterprises with very large numbers of users. RADIUS is designed to handle these large numbers through centralized user administration that eases the repetitive tasks of adding and deleting users and their authentication information. RADIUS also inherently provides some protection against sniffing.

Some RADIUS servers support one-time passwords. One-time passwords are passwords that become invalid as soon as they are used. The passwords are often generated by a token or program, although pre-printed lists are also used. Using one-time passwords ensures that the password cannot be used in a replay attack.

The SG appliance's one-time password support works with products such as Secure Computing SafeWord synchronous and asynchronous tokens and RSA SecurID tokens.

The SG appliance supports RADIUS servers that use challenge/response as part of the authentication process. SafeWord asynchronous tokens use challenge/response to provide authentication. SecurID tokens use challenge/response to initialize or change PINs.

Synopsis

Allows you to create and manage RADIUS realms.

Syntax

`#(config) security radius [subcommands]`

Subcommands

`#(config) security radius create-realm realm_name`
Creates the specified RADIUS realm

`#(config) security radius delete-realm realm_name`
Deletes the specified RADIUS realm.

`#(config) security radius edit-realm realm_name`
Changes the prompt. See Submodes for details.

`#(config) security radius view [realm_name]`
Displays the configuration of all RADIUS realms or just the configuration for *realm_name* if specified.

Submodes

`#(config) security radius edit-realm realm_name`

This changes the prompt to:

`#(config radius realm_name)`

Commands found in this submode include:

`#(config radius realm_name) alternate-server encrypted-secret encrypted_secret`
Specifies the alternate server secret in encrypted format. Note that you must create the encrypted secret before executing the `host [port]` command.

`#(config radius realm_name) alternate-server host [port]`
Specifies the alternate server host and port.

`#(config radius realm_name) alternate-server secret secret`
Specifies the alternate server secret. Note that you must create the secret before executing the `host [port]` command

`#(config radius realm_name) case-sensitive {disable | enable}`
Specifies whether or not the RADIUS server is case-sensitive.

`#(config radius realm_name)` **cookie** {**persistent** {**enable** | **disable**} | **verify-ip** {**enable** | **disable**}
Specifies whether to enable persistent or session cookies, and whether to verify the IP address of the cookie.

`#(config radius realm_name)` **display-name** *display_name*
Specifies the display name for this realm.

`#(config radius realm_name)` **exit**
Exits configure radius-realm mode and returns to configure mode.

`#(config radius realm_name)` **inactivity-timeout** *seconds*
Specifies the amount of time a session can be inactive before being logged out.

`#(config radius realm_name)` **log-out** {**challenge** {**enable** | **disable**} | **display-time** *seconds*}
Allows you to challenge the user after log out and define the log out page display time.

`#(config radius realm_name)` **no alternate-server**
Clears the alternate-server.

`#(config radius realm_name)` **one-time-passwords** {**enable** | **disable**}
Allows you to use one-time passwords for authentication. The default is disabled.

`#(config radius realm_name)` **primary-server encrypted-secret** *encrypted_secret*
Specifies the primary server secret in encrypted format.

`#(config radius realm_name)` **primary-server** *host* [*port*]
Specifies the primary server host and port.

`#(config radius realm_name)` **primary-server secret** *secret*
Specifies the primary server secret.

`#(config radius realm_name)` **refresh-time** {**credential-refresh** *seconds* | **rejected-credentials-refresh** *seconds* | **surrogate-refresh** *seconds*}
Sets the refresh time for credential, rejected credentials cache, and surrogates.

`#(config radius realm_name)` **rename** *new_realm_name*
Renames this realm to *new_realm_name*.

`#(config radius realm_name)` **server-retry** *count*
Specifies the number of authentication retry attempts. This is the number of attempts permitted before marking a server offline. The client maintains an average response time from the server; the retry interval is initially twice the average. If that retry packet fails, then the next packet waits twice as long again. This increases until it reaches the timeout value. The default number of retries is 10.

`#(config radius realm_name)` **spoof-authentication** {**none** | **origin** | **proxy**}
Enables/disables the forwarding of authenticated credentials to the origin content server or for proxy authentication. You can only choose one.

- If set to **origin**, the spoofed header is an Authorization: header.
- If set to **proxy**, the spoofed header is a Proxy-Authorization: header.
- If set to **none**, no spoofing is done.

Flush the entries for a realm if the spoof-authentication value is changed to ensure that the spoof-authentication value is immediately applied.

`#(config radius realm_name)` **timeout** *seconds*
Specifies the RADIUS request timeout. This is the number of seconds the SG appliance allows for each request attempt before giving up on a server and trying another server. Within a timeout multiple packets can be sent to the server, in case the network is busy and packets are lost. The default request timeout is 10 seconds.

`#(config radius realm_name)` **server-charset** *charset*
Allows you to select the character set you need. A character set is a MIME charset name. Any of the

standard charset names for encodings commonly supported by Web browsers can be used. The default is Unicode:UTF8.

One list of standard charset names is found at http://www.iana.org/assignments/character-sets.

`#(config radius` *`realm_name`*`)` **`view`**
Displays this realm's configuration.

`#(config radius` *`realm_name`*`)` **`virtual-url`** *`url`*
Specifies the virtual URL to use for this realm. If no URL is specified the global transparent proxy virtual URL is used.

For More Information

- *Volume 4: Securing the Blue Coat SG Appliance*

Example

```
#(config) security radius edit-realm testradius
#(config radius testradius) server-retry 8
 ok
#(config radius testradius) spoof-authentication proxy
 ok
#(config radius testradius) exit
```

#(config security request-storage)

When a request requiring the user to be challenged with a form contains a body, the request is stored on the SG appliance while the user is being authenticated. Storage options include:

- the maximum request size.
- the expiration of the request.
- whether to verify the IP address of the client requesting against the original request.
- whether to allow redirects from the origin server

The storage options are global, applying to all form exceptions you use.

The global allow redirects configuration option can be overridden on a finer granularity in policy using the `authenticate.redirect_stored_requests(yes|no)` action.

Synopsis

Used with authentication forms to store requests.

Syntax

```
#(config) security request-management [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

`#(config)` **`security request-management allow-redirects`** {**`disable`** | **`enable`**}
Specifies whether to allow redirects. The default is `disable`.

`#(config)` **`security request-management expiry-time`** *seconds*
Sets the amount of time before the stored request expires. The default is `300` seconds (five minutes).

`#(config)` **`security request-management max-size`** *megabytes*
Sets the maximum POST request size during authentication. The default is `50` megabytes.

`#(config)` **`security request-management verify-ip`** {**`disable`** | **`enable`**}
Enables or disables the verify-ip option. The default is to enable the SG appliance to verify the IP address against the original request.

For More Information

- **`#(config security authentication-forms) on page 260`**
- *Volume 4: Securing the Blue Coat SG Appliance*

Example

```
#(config) security request-storage max-size megabytes
#(config) security request-storage expiry-time seconds
#(config) security request-storage verify-ip enable | disable
#(config) security request-storage allow-redirects enable | disable
```

#(config security sequence)

Once a realm is configured, you can associate it with other realms to allow Blue Coat to search for the proper authentication credentials for a specific user. That is, if the credentials are not acceptable to the first realm, they are sent to the second, and so on until a match is found or all the realms are exhausted. This is called *sequencing*.

Synopsis

Allows you to create and manage sequence realms.

Syntax

```
#(config) security sequence [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

`#(config) security sequence create-realm realm_name`
Creates the specified sequence realm

`#(config) security sequence delete-realm realm_name`
Deletes the specified sequence realm.

`#(config) security sequence edit-realm realm_name`
Changes the prompt. See Submodes for details.

`#(config) security sequence view [realm_name]`
Displays the configuration of all sequence realms or just the configuration for *realm_name* if specified.

`#(config) security sequence edit-realm realm_sequence_name`

This changes the prompt to:

`#(config sequence realm_sequence_name)`

Submodes

Commands available in this submode include:

`#(config sequence realm_sequence_name) display-name display_name`
Specifies the display name for this realm.

`#(config sequence realm_sequence_name) exit`
Exits configure sequence-realm mode and returns to configure mode.

`#(config sequence realm_sequence_name) IWA-only-once {disable | enable}`
Specifies whether or not to challenge for credentials for the IWA realm one or multiple times.

`#(config sequence realm_sequence_name) realm {add | demote | promote | remove} {realm_name | clear}`
Adds/demotes/promotes/removes a realm from the realm sequence, or clears all realms from the realm sequence.

`#(config sequence realm_sequence_name) rename new_realm_name`
Renames this realm to *new_realm_sequence_name*.

`#(config sequence realm_sequence_name) try-next-realm-on-error {disable | enable}`
Use this command to specify that the next realm on the list should be attempted if authentication in the previous realm has failed with a permitted error. The default value is to not attempt the next realm and fall out of the sequence.

`#(config sequence realm_sequence_name) view`
Displays this realm's configuration.

`#(config sequence` *`realm_sequence_name`*`)` **`virtual-url`** *`url`*

Specifies the virtual URL to use for this realm sequence. If no URL is specified the global transparent proxy virtual URL is used.

For More Information

- *Volume 4: Securing the Blue Coat SG Appliance*

Example

```
#(config) security sequence edit-realm testsequence
#(config sequence testsequence) IWA-only-once disable
 ok
#(config sequence testsequence) realm clear
 ok
#(config sequence testsequence) exit
```

#(config security siteminder)

Within the SiteMinder system, BCAAA acts as a custom Web agent. It communicates with the SiteMinder policy server to authenticate the user and to obtain a SiteMinder session token, response attribute information, and group membership information.

Custom header and cookie response attributes associated with **OnAuthAccept** and **OnAccessAccept** attributes are obtained from the policy server and forwarded to the SG appliance. They can (as an option) be included in requests forwarded by the *appliance*.

Within the SG system, BCAAA acts as its agent to communicate with the SiteMinder server. The SG appliance provides the user information to be validated to BCAAA, and receives the session token and other information from BCAAA.

Each SG SiteMinder realm used causes the creation of a BCAAA process on the Windows host computer running BCAAA. A single host computer can support multiple SG realms (from the same or different SG appliances); the number depends on the capacity of the BCAAA host computer and the amount of activity in the realms.

Note: Each (active) SiteMinder realm on the SG appliance should reference a different agent on the Policy Server.

Configuration of the SG's realm must be coordinated with configuration of the SiteMinder policy server. Each must be configured to be aware of the other. In addition, certain SiteMinder responses must be configured so that BCAAA gets the information the SG appliance needs.

Synopsis

Allows you to create and manage SiteMinder realms.

Syntax

```
#(config) security siteminder [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

`#(config) security siteminder create-realm realm_name`
Creates the specified SiteMinder realm

`#(config) security siteminder delete-realm realm_name`
Deletes the specified SiteMinder realm.

`#(config) security siteminder edit-realm realm_name`
Changes the prompt. See Submodes for details.

`#(config) security siteminder view [realm_name]`
Displays the configuration of all SiteMinder realms or just the configuration for *realm_name* if specified.

Submodes

`#(config)` **`security siteminder edit-realm`** *`realm_name`*

This changes the prompt to:

`#(config siteminder` *`realm_name`*`)`

Commands in this submode include:

`#(config siteminder` *`realm_name`*`)` **`add-header-responses`** {**`enable`** | **`disable`**}
Enable if your Web applications need information from the SiteMinder policy server responses.

`#(config siteminder` *`realm_name`*`)` **`alternate-agent`** *`agent_name`*
Specifies the alternate agent.

`#(config siteminder` *`realm_name`*`)` **`alternate-agent encrypted-secret`** *`encrypted-shared-secret`*
Specifies the alternate agent secret in encrypted format.

`#(config siteminder` *`realm_name`*`)` **`alternate-agent`** *`host`*
The host ID or the IP address of the system that contains the alternate agent.

`#(config siteminder` *`realm_name`*`)` **`alternate-agent`** *`port`*
The port where the agent listens.

`#(config siteminder` *`realm_name`*`)` **`alternate-agent shared-secret`** *`secret`*
Specifies the alternate agent secret.

`#(config siteminder` *`realm_name`*`)` **`alternate-agent always-redirect-offbox`**
Enables or disables SSO.

#(config siteminder *realm_name*) **`always-redirect-offbox`** {**`enable`** | **`disable`**}
The SG appliance realm can be configured to redirect to an off-box authentication service always. The URL of the service is configured in the scheme definition on the SiteMinder policy server. The SG realm is then configured with always-redirect-offbox enabled.

`#(config siteminder` *`realm_name`*`)` **`case-sensitive`** {**`enable`** | **`disable`**}
Specifies whether the SiteMinder server is case-sensitive.

`#(config siteminder` *`realm_name`*`)` **`cookie`** {**`persistent`** {**`enable`** | **`disable`**} | **`verify-ip`** {**`enable`** | **`disable`**}
Specifies whether to enable persistent or session cookies, and whether to verify the IP address of the cookie.

`#(config siteminder` *`realm_name`*`)` **`display-name`** *`display_name`*
Specifies the display name for this realm.

`#(config siteminder` *`realm_name`*`)` **`exit`**
Exits configure siteminder-realm mode and returns to configure mode.

`#(config siteminder` *`realm_name`*`)` **`inactivity-timeout`** *`seconds`*
Specifies the amount of time a session can be inactive before being logged out.

`#(config siteminder` *`realm_name`*`)` **`log-out`** {**`challenge`** {**`enable`** | **`disable`**} | **`display-time`** *`seconds`*}
Allows you to challenge the user after log out and define the log out page display time.

`#(config siteminder` *`realm_name`*`)` **`no alternate-agent`**
Clears the alternate agent configuration.

`#(config siteminder` *`realm_name`*`)` **`primary-agent`** *`agent_name`*
Specifies the primary agent.

`#(config siteminder` *`realm_name`*`)` **`primary-agent encrypted-secret`** *`encrypted-shared-secret`*
Specifies the primary agent secret in encrypted format.

`#(config siteminder realm_name)` **primary-agent** *host*
The host ID or the IP address of the system that contains the primary agent.

`#(config siteminder realm_name)` **primary-agent** *port*
The port where the agent listens.

`#(config siteminder realm_name)` **primary-agent shared-secret** *secret*
Specifies the primary agent secret.

`#(config siteminder realm_name)` **primary-agent always-redirect-offbox**
Enables or disables the SSO-Only mode.

`#(config siteminder realm_name)` **protected-resource-name** *resource-name*
The protected resource name is the same as the resource name on the SiteMinder server that has rules and policy defined for it.

`#(config siteminder realm_name)` **refresh-time** {**credential-refresh** *seconds* | **rejected-credentials-refresh** *seconds* | **surrogate-refresh** *seconds*}
Sets the refresh time for credential, rejected credentials cache, and surrogates.

`#(config siteminder realm_name)` **rename** *new_realm_name*
Renames this realm to *new_realm_name*.

`#(config siteminder realm_name)` **server-mode** {**failover** | **round-robin**}
Behavior of the server. Failover mode falls back to one of the other servers if the primary one is down. Round-robin modes specifies that all of the servers should be used together in a round-robin approach. Failover is the default

`#(config siteminder realm_name)` **siteminder-server create** ***server_name***
Creates a SiteMinder server.

`#(config siteminder realm_name)` **siteminder-server delete** ***server_name***
Deletes a SiteMinder server.

`#(config siteminder realm_name)` **siteminder-server edit** ***server_name***
This changes the prompt to `#(config siteminder realm_name server_name)`.

`#(config siteminder realm_name server_name)` **accounting-port** *port_number*
The default is 44441. The ports should be the same as the ports configured on the SiteMinder policy server. The valid port range is 1-65535.

`#(config siteminder realm_name server_name)` **authentication-port** *port_number*
The default is 44442. The ports should be the same as the ports configured on the SiteMinder server. The valid port range is 1-65535.

`#(config siteminder realm_name server_name)` **authorization-port** *port_number*
The default is 44443. The ports should be the same as the ports configured on the SiteMinder server. The valid port range is 1-65535.

`#(config siteminder realm_name server_name)` **connection-increment** *number*
The default is 1. The connection increment specifies how many connections to open at a time if more are needed and the maximum is not exceeded.

`#(config siteminder realm_name server_name)` **exit**
Leaves the `server_name` prompt and returns to the SiteMinder *realm_name* prompt.

`#(config siteminder realm_name server_name)` **ip-address** ***ip_address***
The IP address of the SiteMinder server.

`#(config siteminder realm_name server_name)` **max-connections** *number*
The default is 256. The maximum number of connections is 32768.

`#(config siteminder realm_name server_name)` **min-connections** *number*
The default is 1.

`#(config siteminder realm_name server_name)` **timeout** *seconds*
The default is 60.

`#(config siteminder` *`realm_name server_name`*`)` **`view`**
Displays the server's configuration.

`#(config siteminder` *`realm_name`*`)` **`ssl`** {**`enable`** | **`disable`**}
Disables/enables SSL communication between the SG appliance and BCAAA.

`#(config siteminder` *`realm_name`*`)` **`ssl-verify-agent`** {**`enable`** | **`disable`**}
Specifies whether to verify the BCAAA certificate.

`#(config siteminder` *`realm_name`*`)` **`timeout`** *`seconds`*

`#(config siteminder` *`realm_name`*`)` **`validate-client-ip`** {**`disable`** | **`enable`**}
Enables validation of the client IP address. If the client IP address in the SSO cookie might be valid yet different from the current request client IP address, due to downstream proxies or other devices, disable client IP validation. The SiteMinder agents participating in SSO with the SG appliance should also be modified. The TransientIPCheck variable should be set to `yes` to enable IP validation and `no` to disable it.

Enable is the default.

`#(config siteminder` *`realm_name`*`)` **`view`**
Displays this realm's configuration.

`#(config siteminder` *`realm_name`*`)` **`virtual-url`** *`url`*
Specifies the virtual URL to use for this SiteMinder realm. If no URL is specified the global transparent proxy virtual URL is used.

For More Information

- **`#(config security coreid) on page 264`**
- *Volume 4: Securing the Blue Coat SG Appliance*

Example

```
#(config) security siteminder edit-realm test2
#(config siteminder test2) server-mode round-robin
 ok
#(config siteminder test2) ssl enable
 ok
#(config siteminder test2) exit
```

#(config) security transparent-proxy-auth

Synopsis

Configures authentication method for transparent proxies

Syntax

```
#(config) security transparent-proxy-auth [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

```
#(config) security transparent-proxy-auth method {ip | cookie}
```

Specifies whether to use IP or cookie surrogate credentials.

For More Information

- *Volume 1: Getting Started*

Example

```
#(config) security transparent-proxy-auth method cookie
```

#(config) security users

Synopsis

Allows administrators to manage user log ins, logouts and refresh data.

Syntax

```
#(config) security users
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config users) [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

`#(config users) authorization-refresh {ip-addresses prefix [realm_name] | realms [realm_name] | users glob_user_name [realm_name]}`
Refreshes authorization data for the specified IP address, realm (or all realms), or user.

The IP address subnet notation is based on Classless Inter-Domain_Routing (CIDR):

- 1.2.3.4 : the IP address 1.2.3.4
- 1.2.3.0/24: the subnet 1.2.3.0 with netmask 255.255.255.0

The username pattern is a glob-based pattern, supporting three operators:

- '*' : match zero or more characters
- '?' : match exactly one character
- '[x-y]': match any character in the character range from 'x' to 'y'

`#(config users) credentials-refresh {ip-addresses prefix [realm_name] | realms [realm_name] | users glob_user_name [realm_name]}`
Refreshes credential data for the specified IP address, realm (or all realms), or user.

`#(config users) log-out {ip-addresses prefix [realm_name] | realms [realm_name] | users glob_user_name [realm_name]}`
Logs out the specified IP address, realm (or all realms), or user.

`#(config users) surrogates-refresh {ip-addresses prefix [realm_name] | realms [realm_name] | users glob_user_name [realm_name]}`
Refreshes surrogate data for the specified IP address, realm (or all realms), or user.

`#(config users) view detailed {ip-addresses prefix [realm_name] | realms [realm_name] | users glob_user_name [realm_name]}`
See a detailed view of users, sorted by IP address, realm, or username.

`#(config users) view ip-addresses prefix [realm_name] | realms [realm_name] | users glob_user_name [realm_name]}`
See all logged-in users sorted by IP address, realm, or username.

For More Information

- *Volume 4: Securing the Blue Coat SG Appliance*

Example

```
#(config) security users
#(config users) surrogates-refresh ip-addresses 10.25.36.0/24
```

#(config) security username

Synopsis

Sets the console username.

Syntax

```
#(config) security username name
```

For More Information

- *Volume 4: Securing the Blue Coat SG Appliance*

Example

```
#(config) security username QATest
```

#(config windows-sso)

In a Windows SSO realm, the client is never challenged for authentication. Instead, the BCAAA agent collects information about the current logged on user from the domain controller and/or by querying the client machine. Then the IP address of an incoming client request is mapped to a user identity in the domain. If authorization information is also needed, then another realm (LDAP or local) must be created.

Synopsis

Allows you to create and manage Windows SSO realms.

Syntax

`#(config) security windows-sso [subcommands]`

Subcommands

`#(config) security windows-sso create-realm realm_name`
Creates the specified Windows SSO realm.

`#(config) security windows-sso edit-realm realm_name`
Changes the prompt to allow configuration for the specified *realm_name*.

`SGOS#(config windows-sso realm_name) alternate-agent {host hostname | port port_number}`
Specifies the alternate agent hostname and port number.

`SGOS#(config windows-sso realm_name) authorization {realm-name authorization-realm-name | username username | no {authorization-realm-name | username} | self}`
Specifies the realm name, which can be **self**, and username for authorization. **No** clears the realm and username.

`SGOS#(config windows-sso realm_name) cookie {persistent {disable | enable}| verify-ip {disable | enable}}`
Specifies whether to enable persistent or session cookies, and whether to verify the IP address of the cookie.

`SGOS#(config windows-sso realm_name) exit`
Leaves the windows-sso edit-realm mode.

`SGOS#(config windows-sso realm_name) inactivity-timeout seconds`
Specifies the amount of time a session can be inactive before being logged out.

`SGOS#(config windows-sso realm_name) no alternate-agent`
Removes the alternate agent.

`SGOS#(config windows-sso realm_name) primary-agent {host hostname | port port_number}`
Specifies the primary agent hostname and port number.

`SGOS#(config windows-sso realm_name) refresh-time {authorization-refresh seconds | surrogate-refresh seconds}`
Sets the refresh time for authorization and surrogates.

`SGOS#(config windows-sso realm_name) rename new_realm_name`
Renames the current realm to *new_realm_name*.

`SGOS#(config windows-sso realm_name) ssl {enable | disable}`
Enables or disables SSL between the SG appliance and the BCAAA service.

SGOS#(config windows-sso *realm_name*) **ssl-verify-agent** {**enable** | **disable**}
Enables or disables verification of the BCAAA certificate. By default, if SSL is enabled, the Windows SSO BCAAA certificate is verified.

SGOS#(config windows-sso *realm_name*) **sso-type** {**query-client** | **query-dc** | **query-dc-client**}
Selects the method of querying: client, domain controller, or both. The default is domain controller.

SGOS#(config windows-sso *realm_name*) **timeout** *seconds*
The time allotted for each request attempt. The default is 60 seconds.

SGOS#(config windows-sso *realm_name*) **view**
Displays this realm's configuration.

SGOS#(config windows-sso *realm_name*) **virtual-url** *url*
Specifies the virtual URL to use for this SiteMinder realm. If no URL is specified the global transparent proxy virtual URL is used.

#(config) **security windows-sso delete-realm** *realm_name*
Deletes the specified Windows SSO realm.

#(config) **security windows-sso view** [*realm_name*]
Displays the configuration of all Windows SSO realms or just the configuration for *realm_name* if specified.

For More Information

- *Volume 4: Securing the Blue Coat SG Appliance*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) security windows-sso edit-realm test2
SGOS#(config windows-sso test2) ssotype query-client-dc
 ok
SGOS#(config windows-sso test2) exit
```

#(config security xml)

An XML realm uses XML messages to request authentication and authorization information from an HTTP XML service (the XML *responder* that runs on an external server). The XML realm (the XML *requestor*) supports both HTTP GET and HTTP POST methods to request an XML response. The XML messages are based on SOAP 1.2.

The XML responder service accepts XML requests from the SG appliance, communicates with an authentication or authorization server, and responds with the result. When the realm is used to authenticate users, it challenges for Basic credentials. The username and password are then sent to the XML responder to authenticate and authorize the user.

The XML realm can place the username and password in the HTTP headers of the request or in the body of the XML POST request. If the credentials are placed in the HTTP headers, the Web server must do the authentication and the XML service just handles authorization. If credentials are placed in the XML request body, the XML service handles both authentication and authorization.

Synopsis

Allows you to configure and manage XML realms.

Syntax

```
#(config) security xml [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

```
#(config) security xml create-realm realm_name
```
Creates the specified XML realm

```
#(config) security xml delete-realm realm_name
```
Deletes the specified XML realm.

```
#(config) security xml edit-realm realm_name
```
Changes the prompt. See Submodes for details.

```
#(config) security xml view [realm_name]
```
Displays the configuration of all XML realms or just the configuration for *realm_name* if specified.

Submodes

```
#(config) security xml edit-realm realm_name
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config xml realm_name)
```

Commands in the `xml realm_name` mode:

```
#(config xml realm_name) alternate-responder {host | port}
```
Specifies the alternate responder host and port.

```
#(config xml realm_name) alternate-responder path {authenticate
    authenticate_path | authorize authorize_path}
```
Specifies the alternate responder path for authentication and authorization requests.

```
#(config xml realm_name) authorization {default-group-name group-name | username
    use-full-username | realm {none | username | self}}
```
Specifies the default group name, username, and realm for authorization.

```
#(config xml realm_name) connections count
```
Specifies the number of connections to the responder.

`#(config xml realm_name) cookie {persistent {enable | disable} | verify-ip {enable | disable}`
Specifies whether to enable persistent or session cookies, and whether to verify the IP address of the cookie.

`#(config xml realm_name) display-name display_name`
Specifies the display name for this realm.

`#(config xml realm_name) exit`
Exits configure xml-realm mode and returns to configure mode.

`#(config xml realm_name) inactivity-timeout seconds`
Specifies the amount of time a session can be inactive before being logged out.

`#(config xml realm_name) log-out {challenge {enable | disable} | display-time seconds}`
Allows you to challenge the user after log out and define the log out page display time.

`#(config xml realm_name) no alternate-responder`
Removes the alternate-responder.

`#(config xml realm_name) no default-group-name`
Removes the default-group-name.

`#(config xml realm_name) one-time-passwords {enable | disable}`
Allows you to use one-time passwords for authentication. The default is disabled.

`#(config xml realm_name) primary-responder {host | port}`
Specifies the primary responder host and port.

`#(config xml realm_name) primary-responder path {authenticate authenticate_path | authorize authorize_path}`
Specifies the primary responder path for authentication and authorization requests.

`#(config xml realm_name) refresh-time {authorization-refresh seconds | credential-refresh seconds | rejected-credentials-refresh seconds| surrogate-refresh seconds}`
Sets the refresh time for authorization, credential, rejected credentials cache, and surrogates.

`#(config xml realm_name) rename new_realm_name`
Renames this realm to *new_realm_name*.

`#(config xml realm_name) retry count`
Specifies the number of times for the system to retry a request. The default is not to retry a request.

`#(config xml realm_name) spoof-authentication {none | origin | proxy}`
Enables/disables the forwarding of authenticated credentials to the origin content server or for proxy authentication. Flush the entries for a realm if the spoof-authentication value is changed to ensure that the spoof-authentication value is immediately applied.

You can only choose one.

- If set to **origin**, the spoofed header is an Authorization: header.
- If set to **proxy**, the spoofed header is a Proxy-Authorization: header.
- If set to **none**, no spoofing is done.

`#(config xml realm_name) timeout seconds`
Specifies the XML request timeout. This is the number of seconds the SG appliance allows for each request attempt before giving up on a server and trying another server. Within a timeout multiple packets can be sent to the server, in case the network is busy and packets are lost. The default request timeout is 10 seconds

`#(config xml realm_name) view`
Displays this realm's configuration.

`#(config xml` *realm_name*`)` **virtual-url** *virtual URL*
Specifies the virtual URL to use for this realm. If no URL is specified the global transparent proxy virtual URL is used.

`#(config xml` *realm_name*`)` **xml** {**credentials** {**header** | **request**} | **request-interested** {**enable** | **disable**} | **username** *username_parameter*}
Specifies the user credential location and the username parameter. The username parameter is passed in the request when this realm is used for authentication or authorization.

For More Information

- *Volume 4: Securing the Blue Coat SG Appliance*

Example

```
#(config) security xml edit-realm xml14
#(config xml xml14) display-name
 ok
#(config xml xml14) spoof-authentication origin
 ok
#(config xml xml14) exit
```

#(config) session-monitor

Synopsis

Use this command to configure options to monitor RADIUS accounting messages and to maintain a session table based on the information in these messages.

Syntax

```
#(config) session-monitor
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config session-monitor)
```

Subcommands

`#(config session-monitor)` **`cluster disable`**
Disables cluster support.

`#(config session-monitor)` **`cluster enable`**
Enables cluster support. The group address must be set before the cluster can be enabled.

`#(config session-monitor)` **`cluster grace-period`** *`seconds`*
Set the time to keep session transactions in memory while waiting for slave logins. This can be set to allow session table synchronization to occur after the synchronization-delay has expired. The default is 30 seconds; the range is 0 to 2^31-1 seconds.

`#(config session-monitor)` **`cluster`** [**`no`**] **`group-address`** *`IP_Address`*
Set or clear (the default) the failover group IP address. This must be an existing failover group address.

`#(config session-monitor)` **`cluster port`** *`port`*
Set the TCP/IP port for the session replication control. The default is 55555.

`#(config session-monitor)` **`cluster synchronization-delay`** *`seconds`*
Set the maximum time to wait for session table synchronization. The default is zero; the range is from 0 to 2 ^31 -1 seconds. During this time evaluation of `$(session.username)` is delayed, so proxy traffic might also be delayed.

`#(config session-monitor)` **`disable`**
Disable (the default) session monitoring.

`#(config session-monitor)` **`enable`**
Enable session monitoring.

`#(config session-monitor)` **`max-entries`** *`integer`*
The maximum number of entries in the session table. The default is 500,000; the range is from 1 to 2,000,000. If the table reaches the maximum, additional START messages are ignored.

`#(config session-monitor)` **`radius acct-listen-port`** *`port`*
The port number where the SG appliance listens for accounting messages.

`#(config session-monitor)` **`radius authentication`** {**`disable`** | **`enable`**}
Enable or disable (the default) the authentication of RADIUS messages using the shared secret. Note that the shared secret must be configured before authentication is enabled.

`#(config session-monitor)` **`radius encrypted-shared-secret`** *`encrypted-secret`*
Specify the shared secret (in encrypted form) used for RADIUS protocol authentication. The secret is decrypted using the configuration-passwords-key.

`#(config session-monitor)` **`radius no shared-secret`**
Clears the shared secret used for RADIUS protocol authentication.

`#(config session-monitor)` **`radius respond`** {**`disable`** | **`enable`**}
Enable (the default) or disable generation of RADIUS responses.

`#(config session-monitor)` **`radius shared-secret`** *`plaintext_secret`*
Specify the shared secret used for RAIDUS protocol in plaintext.

`#(config session-monitor)` **`timeout`** *`minutes`*
The amount of time before a session table entry assumes a STOP message has been sent. The default is 120 minutes; the range is from 0 to 65535 minutes. Zero indicates no timeout.

`#(config session-monitor)` **`view`**
View the session-monitor configuration.

For More Information

- *Volume 5: Advanced Networking*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) session-monitor
SGOS#(config session-monitor) view
General:
  Status: disabled
  Entry timeout: 120 minutes
  Maximum entries: 500000
  Cluster support: disabled
  Cluster port: 55555
  Cluster group address: none
  Synchronization delay: 0
  Synchronization grace period: 30
Accounting protocol: radius
  Radius accounting:
  Listen ports:
  Accounting: 1813
  Responses: Enabled
  Authentication: Disabled
  Shared secret: ************
```

#(config) sg-client

Synopsis

Use this command to configure the Client Manager and client configuration options for the SG Client.

Syntax

```
#(config) sg-client
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config sg-client)
```

Subcommands

`#(config sg-client)` **`enable`**
Enable this appliance as the Client Manager. You can have only one Client Manager in your ADN network.

Note: Before you can enable an appliance to be the Client Manager, you must configure the ADN manager clients will use. If you try to enable the Client Manager before you configure an ADN manager for clients, the following error displays: `The ADN primary manager must be set prior to enabling the SG Client Manager.` To set the clients' ADN manager, see "#config (sg-client adn)" on page 312.

`#(config sg-client)` **`disable`**
Do not use this appliance as the Client Manager.

`#(config sg-client)` **`client-manager host`** {`from-client-address` | <*ip-address* | *host*>}
Identify this appliance as the Client Manager in one of the following ways:

- `from-client-address`: (*Recommended*.) Use this command if you want clients to download the SG Client software, configuration, and updates from the host from which the clients originally obtained the software.
- `ip-address` or `host`: Use this command only if you want to change the host from which clients download the SG Client software, configuration, and updates. Enter a fully-qualified host name or IP address only; do not preface the with `http://` or `https://`or downloads will fail.

  In other words, this option enables you to change the host from which currently-installed clients obtain future software and configuration updates. Use caution when selecting this option because if clients are unable to connect to the host you enter in the adjacent field, new installations from the Client Manager and updates to existing installations will fail.

Note: Blue Coat recommends you enter the fully-qualified host name. If you enter either an unqualified host name or IP address and change it later, connections to all currently-connected clients are dropped.

`#(config sg-client)` **`client-manager install-port`** *port*
Port on which the host you entered in the preceding option listens for requests from clients.

`#(config sg-client)` **`client-manager keyring`** *keyring*
Name of the keyring the Client Manager will use when clients connect to it.

`#(config sg-client)` **`max-cache-disk-percent`** *percentage*
Maximum percentage of client disk space to use for caching objects, such as CIFS objects. Valid values are 10—90; default is 10.

Note: The cache will always leave at least 1GB free on the system root. For more information, see the chapter on configuring the SG Client in *Volume 5: Advanced Networking*.

`#(config sg-client)` **`software-upgrade-path`** *`url`*
Sets the URL used to upload updated SG Client software to the Client Manager so it can make the latest SG Client software available to update or to install on client machines.

Important: After you update the Client Manager, whenever users connect using the SG Client, they will be required to update the SG Client software.

Upload the SG Client software from a URL in the following format:

`https://`*`host`*`:`*`port`*`/sgclient/SGClient.car`

For example,

`https://mysg.example.com:8004/sgclient/SGClient.car`

After you set the path from which to load the updates, see **`# load sg-client-software Loads the SG Client software to the Client Manager. To use this command, you must have previously defined an upload location using #(config) sg-client on page 309. Messages display as the software loads.`** on page 57.

`#(config sg-client)` **`tcp-window-size`** *`bytes`*
Sets the number of bytes allowed before acknowledgement (the value must be between 8192 and 4194304). If you know the bandwidth and roundtrip delay, the TCP window size you should is us approximately `2 * bandwidth * delay`. For example, if the bandwidth of the link is 8 Mbits/sec and the round-trip delay is 0.75 seconds:

TCP window size = `2 * 8 Mbits/sec * 0.75 sec = 12 Mbits = 1.5 Mbytes`

The setting in this example would be 1500000 bytes. This number goes up as either bandwidth or delay increases, and goes down as they decrease. Because the bandwidth and delay for mobile users can vary, Blue Coat recommends you test mobile client performance in a controlled environment before deciding on a value to use in production.

`#(config sg-client)` **`update-interval`** *`minutes`*
Frequency clients check with the Client Manager for updated SG Client software. Default is 120.

`#(config sg-client)` **`view`**
View current Client Manager settings.

For More Information

- *Volume 5: Advanced Networking*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) client-manager host enable

SGOS#(config) client-manager host from-client-address

SGOS#(config) software-upgrade-path
   https://mysg.example.com:8004/sgclient/SGClient.car
```

#config (sg-client adn)

Synopsis

Configure ADN manager and ADN rules settings for SG Clients.

Syntax

```
#(config) sg-client
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config sg-client)
#(config sg-client) adn
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config sg-client adn)
```

Subcommands

`#(config sg-client adn)` **`primary-manager`** *`ip-address`*
The IP address of the primary ADN manager. The ADN manager keeps track of and advertises the routes of the appliances it knows about. You must specify a primary manager.

The SG Client obtains the routing table from the ADN manager.

`#(config sg-client adn)` **`backup-manager`** *`ip-address`*
The IP address of the backup ADN manager. Configuring a backup ADN manager is optional but recommended.

If the ADN manager becomes unavailable for any reason, the backup ADN manager takes over the task of advertising routes to all ADN nodes, such as the SG Client.

`#(config sg-client adn)` **`manager-port`** *`port`*
ADN manager and backup manager plain listen port. (To use the SG Client in your ADN network, the ADN manager's listening mode must be configured for **Plain Only**, **Plain Read-Only**, or **Both**.)

`#(config sg-client adn)` **`port-list {exclude-ports | include-ports}`**
Determines whether you will use the include ports list or exclude ports list.

`#(config sg-client adn)` **`{exclude-ports | include-ports}`** {port-list | port-range}
Determines which TCP ports to exclude or include in ADN tunnels. Assuming clients using the SG Client software can connect to an ADN peer that can optimize traffic to the destination IP address, this setting determines ports the clients can use (or not use).

For example, you can exclude ports or port ranges because traffic coming from those ports has already been encrypted.

For example, the following command excludes traffic from ports 22 and 443 from being routed through ADN:

```
#(config sg-client adn) exclude-ports 22,443
```

Valid values: Comma-separated list of ports and port ranges (no spaces, separated by a dash character).

`#(config sg-client adn)` **`exclude-subnets`**
Configure the subnets excluded from ADN acceleration

`#(config sg-client adn exclude-subnets)` **`{add | remove}`** *`subnet_prefix[/prefix length]`*
Adds or removes subnets from the excluded subnets list, which is the list of subnets not included in ADN tunnels. Use a comma-separated list of IP addresses and subnets in CIDR notation.

For example, the following command excludes traffic from the IP address 128.211.168.0 and subnet 255.255.255.0 from being routed through the ADN tunnel:

```
#(config sg-client adn exclude-subnets) add 128.211.168.0/24
```

`#(config sg-client adn exclude-subnets) clear`
Removes all subnets from the current excluded subnet list. In other words, traffic from all IP addresses and subnets will be routed through the ADN tunnel.

`#(config sg-client adn exclude-subnets) exit`
Exits the `exclude-subnets` submode.

`#(config sg-client adn exclude-subnets) view`
View the list of excluded subnets.

`#(config sg-client adn) exit`
Exit the `adn` submode.

For More Information

- *Volume 5: Advanced Networking*

Example

```
#(config sg-client adn) exclude-ports 22,88,443,993,995,1352,1494,1677,3389,5900
```

#config (sg-client cifs)

Synopsis

Configure CIFS settings for SG Clients.

Syntax

```
#(config) sg-client
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config sg-client)
```

```
#(config sg-client) cifs
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config sg-client cifs)
```

Subcommands

`#(config sg-client cifs)` **`directory-cache-time`** *`seconds`*
Number of seconds for directory listings to remain in the cache. Default is 30.

`#(config sg-client cifs)` **`{disable | enable}`**
Disable or enable CIFS acceleration. CIFS acceleration is enabled by default.

`#(config sg-client cifs)` **`exit`**
Exit the `sg-client cifs` command.

`#(config sg-client cifs)` **`write-back`** `{full | none}`
Determines whether or not users can continue sending data to the appliance while the appliance is writing data on the back end.

- `full` enables write-back, which in turn makes the appliance appear to the user as a file server; in other words, the appliance constantly sends approval to the client and allows the client to send data while the back end takes advantage of the compressed TCP connection.
- `none` disables write-back. Disabling write-back can introduce substantial latency as clients send data to the appliance and wait for acknowledgement before sending more data.

One reason to set this option to none is the risk of data loss if the link from the branch to the core server fails. There is no way to recover queued data if such a link failure occurs.

`#(config sg-client cifs)` **`view`**
View client CIFS settings.

For More Information

- *Volume 5: Advanced Networking*

Example

```
SGOS#(config sg-client cifs) enable
```

```
SGOS#(config sg-client cifs) write-back full
```

#(config) shell

Synopsis

Use this command to configure options for the shell.

`#(config)` **`shell max-connections`**
Maximum number of shell connections. Allowed values are between 1 and 65535.

`#(config)` **`shell no`**
Disables the prompt, realm-banner, and welcome-banner strings.

`#(config)` **`shell prompt`**
Sets the prompt that the user sees in the shell. If the string includes white space, enclose the string in quotes.

`#(config)` **`shell realm-banner`**
Sets the realm banner that the user sees when logging into a realm through the shell. If the string includes white space, enclose the string in quotes.

`#(config)` **`shell welcome-banner`**
Sets the welcome banner that the users sees when logging into the shell. If the string includes white space, enclose the string in quotes.

For More Information

- *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) shell prompt "Telnet Shell >"
  ok
SGOS#(config) shell welcome-banner "Welcome to the Blue Coat Telnet Shell"
  ok
```

#(config) show

- # show on page 72.

#(config) snmp

Synopsis

Use this command to set SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) options for the SG appliance.

The SG appliance can be viewed using an SNMP management station. The SG appliance supports MIB-2 (RFC 1213).

Syntax

```
#(config) snmp
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config snmp)
```

Subcommands

`#(config snmp)` **`authorize-traps`**
Enables SNMP authorize traps.

#(config snmp) **`disable`**
Disables SNMP for the SG appliance.

`#(config snmp)` **`director-trap-address`** *`director_ip director_ID_string`*
Enables Director to receive SNMP traps from the SG appliance.

#(config snmp) **`enable`**
Enables SNMP for the SG appliance.

`#(config snmp)` **`encrypted-read-community`** *`encrypted_password`*
Specifies encrypted read community string.

`#(config snmp)` **`encrypted-trap-community`** *`encrypted_password`*
Specifies encrypted trap community string.

`#(config snmp)` **`encrypted-write-community`** *`encrypted_password`*
Specifies encrypted write community string.

`#(config snmp)` **`exit`**
Exits configure snmp mode and returns to configure mode.

`#(config snmp)` **`no authorize-traps`**
Disables the current authorize traps settings.

`#(config snmp)` **`no sys-contact`**
Disables the current system contact settings.

`#(config snmp)` **`no sys-location`**
Disables the current system location settings.

`#(config snmp)` **`no trap-address`** {**`1`** | **`2`** | **`3`**}
Disables the current trap address settings (for trap address 1, 2, or 3).

`#(config snmp)` **`read-community`** *`password`*
Sets the read community password or encrypted-password.

`#(config snmp)` **`reset-configuration`**
Resets the SNMP configuration to the default settings, clearing community strings and any IP addresses. You do not need to reboot the system after making these changes.

`#(config snmp)` **`snmp-writes`** {**`disable`** | **`enable`**}
Enables or disables SNMP write capability.

`#(config snmp)` **`sys-contact`** *`string`*
Sets the "sysContact" MIB variable to *`string`*.

`#(config snmp)` **`sys-location string`**
Sets the "sysLocation" MIB variable to *`string`*.

`#(config snmp)` **`test-trap`** *`string`*
Sends a policy test trap with the *`string`* as the message. Quotes are required if the message contains whitespace.

`#(config snmp)` **`trap-address`** {**`1`** | **`2`** | **`3`**} *`ip_address`*
Indicates which IP address(es) can receive traps and in which priority.

`#(config snmp)` **`password`**
Sets the trap community password or encrypted-password.

`#(config snmp)` **`view`**
Displays SNMP settings.

`#(config snmp)` **`write-community`** *`password`*
Sets the write community password or encrypted-password.

For More Information

- *Volume 10: Managing the Blue Coat SG Appliance*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) snmp
SGOS#(config snmp) authorize-traps
 ok
SGOS#(config snmp) exit
SGOS#(config)
```

#(config) socks-gateways

Synopsis

Use this command to set the SOCKS gateways settings.

Syntax

```
#(config) socks-gateways
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config socks-gateways)
```

Subcommands

`#(config socks-gateways)` **`create`** *`gateway_alias gateway_host SOCKS_port`* [**`group`**=*`group-alias`*] [**`version=`**{**`4`** | **`5`** [**`user=`***`username`* {**`password`**=*`password`* | **`encrypted-password`**=*`encrypted-password`*}]

Creates a SOCKS gateway.

Note: The SOCKS compression feature is deprecated, as a more advanced version of this functionality is now available as part of the Application Delivery Network features. Refer to *Volume 5: Advanced Networking* for instructions on how to configure and use these features.

`#(config socks-gateways)` **`create`** {**`gateway`** | **`group`** *`group_name`* }

`#(config socks-gateways)` **`delete`** {**`all`** | **`gateway`** *`gateway_alias`* | **`group`** *`group_name`*}

Deletes a SOCKS gateway or group.

`#(config socks-gateways)` **`destroy-old-passwords`**

Destroys any cleartext passwords left after an upgrade.

`#(config socks-gateways)` **`edit`** *`gateway_alias`*

Changes the prompt. See **`#(config socks-gateways gateway_alias)`** on page 321.

`#(config socks-gateways)` **`edit`** *`group_alias`*

Changes the prompt. See**`#(config socks-gateways group_alias) on page 323`**.

`#(config socks-gateways)` **`exit`**

Exits configure socks-gateways mode and returns to configure mode.

`#(config socks-gateways)` **`failure-mode`** {**`open`** | **`closed`**}

Sets the default failure mode (that can be overridden by policy).

`#(config socks-gateways)` **`host-affinity http`** {**`default`** | **`none`** | **`client-ip-address`** | **`accelerator-cookie`**} *`gateway_or_group_alias`*

Selects a host affinity method for HTTP. If a gateway or group alias is not specified for the `accelerator-cookie`, `client-ip-address`, or `none` options, the global default is used. Use the `default` option to specify default configurations for all the settings for a specified gateway or group.

`#(config socks-gateways)` **`host-affinity ssl`** {**`default`** | **`none`** | **`client-ip-address`** | **`accelerator-cookie`** | **`ssl-session-id`**} *`gateway_or_group_alias`*
Selects a host affinity method for SSL. If a gateway or group alias is not specified for the `accelerator-cookie`, `client-ip-address`, `none`, or `ssl-session-id` options, the global default is used. Use the `default` option to specify default configurations for all the settings for a specified gateway or group.

`#(config socks-gateways)` **`host-affinity other`** {**`default`** | **`client-ip-address`** | **`none`**} *`gateway_or_group_alias`*
Selects a host affinity method (non-HTTP or non-SSL). If a gateway or group alias is not specified for the `client-ip-address`, or `none` options, the global default is used. Use the `default` option to specify default configurations for all the settings for a specified gateway or group.

`#(config socks-gateways)` **`load-balance gateway`** {**`default`** | **`none`** | **`round-robin`** | **`least-connections`**} *`gateway_alias`*
Selects a host affinity method (non-HTTP or non-SSL). If a gateway alias is not specified for the `client-ip-address`, or `none` options, the global default is used. Use the `default` option to specify default configurations for all the settings for a specified gateway .

`#(config socks-gateways)` **`load-balance group`** {**`default`** | **`none`** | **`domain-hash`** | **`url-hash`** | **`round-robin`** | **`least-connections`**} *`group_alias`*

`#(config socks-gateways)` **`no path`**
Clears network path to download SOCKS gateway settings.

`#(config socks-gateways)` **`path`** *`url`*
Specifies the network path to download SOCKS gateway settings.

`#(config socks-gateways)` **`sequence`** {**`add`** | **`demote`** | **`promote`** | **`remove`**} *`gateway_alias`*
Adds an alias to the end of the default failover sequence.

`socks-gateways)` **`sequence clear`**
Clears the default failover sequence.

`#(config socks-gateways)` **`view`**
Displays all SOCKS gateways.

For More Information

- *Volume 5: Advanced Networking*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) socks-gateways
SGOS#(config socks-gateways) failure-mode open
 ok
SGOS#(config socks-gateways) exit
SGOS#(config)
```

#(config socks-gateways *gateway_alias)*

Synopsis

These commands allow you to edit the settings of a specific SOCKS gateway.

Syntax

```
#(config) socks-gateways
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config socks-gateways)
```

```
edit gateway_alias
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config socks-gateways gateway_alias)
```

Subcommands

`#(config socks-gateways gateway_alias)` **`encrypted-password`**
Changes the version 5 encrypted password.

`#(config socks-gateways gateway_alias)` **`exit`**
Exits configure socks-gateways *gateway_alias* mode and returns to configure socks-gateways mode.

`#(config socks-gateways gateway_alias)` **`host`**
Changes the host name.

`#(config socks-gateways gateway_alias)` **`host-affinity http`** {**`accelerator-cookie`** | **`client-ip-address`** | **`default`** | **`none`**}
Changes the host affinity method (HTTP) for this host.

`#(config socks-gateways gateway_alias)` **`host-affinity other`** {**`client-ip-address`** | **`default`** | **`none`**}
Changes the host affinity other method for this host.

`#(config socks-gateways gateway_alias)` **`host-affinity ssl`** {**`accelerator-cookie`** | **`client-ip-address`** | **`default`** | **`ssl-session-id`** | **`none`**}
Changes the host affinity method (SSL) for this host.

`#(config socks-gateways gateway_alias)` **`load-balance`** {**`default`** | **`least-connections`** | **`round-robin`** | **`none`**}
Changes the load balancing method.

`#(config socks-gateways gateway_alias)` **`no`** {**`password`** | **`username`**}
Optional, and only if you use version 5. Deletes the version 5 password or username.

`#(config socks-gateways gateway_alias)` **`password`**
Optional, and only if you use version 5. Changes the version 5 password. If you specify a password, you must also specify a username.

`#(config socks-gateways gateway_alias)` **`port`**
Changes the SOCKS port.

`#(config socks-gateways gateway_alias)` **`request-compression`**
Changes the SOCKS port to request compression.

`#(config socks-gateways gateway_alias)` **`user`**
Optional, and only if you use version 5. Changes the version 5 username. If you specify a username, you must also specify a password.

`#(config socks-gateways gateway_alias) version {4 | 5}`
Changes the SOCKS version.

`#(config socks-gateways gateway_alias) view`
Shows the current settings for this SOCKS gateway.

For More Information

- *Volume 5: Advanced Networking*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) socks-gateways
SGOS#(config socks-gateways) edit testgateway
SGOS#(config socks-gateways testgateway) version 5
 ok
SGOS#(config socks-gateways testgateway) exit
SGOS#(config socks-gateways) exit
SGOS#(config)
```

#(config socks-gateways *group_alias)*

Synopsis

These commands allow you to edit the settings of a specific SOCKS gateway group.

Syntax

```
#(config) socks-gateways
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config socks-gateways) create host_alias hostname protocol=port
group=group_alias
```

```
#(config socks-gateways) edit group_alias
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config socks-gateways group_alias)
```

Subcommands

`#(config socks-gateways group_alias)` **`add`**
Adds a new group.

`#(config socks-gateways group_alias)` **`exit`**
Exits `#(config socks-gateways group_alias)` mode and returns to `#(config socks-gateways)` mode.

`#(config socks-gateways group_alias)` **`host-affinity http`** {**`accelerator-cookie`** | **`client-ip-address`** | **`default`** | **`none`**}
Changes the host affinity method (HTTP) for this group.

`#(config socks-gateways group_alias)` **`host-affinity other`** {**`client-ip-address`** | **`default`** | **`none`**}
Changes the host affinity other method for this host.

`#(config socks-gateways group_alias)` **`host-affinity ssl`** {**`accelerator-cookie`** | **`client-ip-address`** | **`default`** | **`ssl-session-id`** | **`none`**}
Changes the host affinity method (SSL) for this group.

`#(config socks-gateways group_alias)` **`load-balance method`** {**`default`** | **`domain-hash`** | **`least-connections`** | **`none`** | **`round-robin`** | **`url-hash`**}
Changes the load balancing method.

`#(config socks-gateways group_alias)` **`remove`**
Removes an existing group.

`#(config socks-gateways group_alias)` **`view`**
Shows the current settings for this SOCKS gateway.

For More Information

- *Volume 5: Advanced Networking*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) socks-gateways
SGOS#(config socks-gateways) edit test_group
SGOS#(config socks-gateways test_group) load-balance hash domain
 ok
SGOS#(config socks-gateways test_group) exit
SGOS#(config socks-gateways) exit
SGOS#(config)
```

#(config) socks-machine-id

Synopsis

Use this command to set the machine ID for SOCKS.

If you are using a SOCKS server for the primary or alternate gateway, you must specify the SG appliance machine ID for the Identification (Ident) protocol used by the SOCKS gateway.

Syntax

`#(config)` **`socks-machine-id`** *`machine_id`*

Indicates the machine ID for the SOCKS server.

Example

```
SGOS#(config) socks-machine-id 10.25.36.47
 ok
```

#(config) socks-proxy

Synopsis

Use this command to configure a SOCKS proxy on anSG appliance. Only one server is permitted per SG appliance. Both SOCKSv4 and SOCKSv5 are supported by Blue Coat, and both are enabled by default.

Note that the version of SOCKS used is only configurable through policy. For example, to use only SOCKSv5:

```
<proxy>
  socks.version=4 deny
```

Syntax

```
#(config) socks-proxy
```

Subcommands

`#(config)` **`socks-proxy accept-timeout`** *`seconds`*
Sets maximum time to wait on an inbound BIND.

`#(config)` **`socks-proxy connect-timeout`** *`seconds`*
Sets maximum time to wait on an outbound CONNECT.

`#(config)` **`socks-proxy max-connections`** *`num_connections`*
Sets maximum allowed SOCKS client connections.

`#(config)` **`socks-proxy max-idle-timeout`** *`seconds`*
Specifies the minimum timeout after which SOCKS can consider the connection for termination when the max connections are reached.

`#(config)` **`socks-proxy min-idle-timeout`** *`seconds`*
Specifies the max idle timeout value after which SOCKS should terminate the connection.

`#(config)` **`socks-proxy pa-customer-id`** *`customer_id`*
Validates the license for the specified customer. (The customer_id is the Customer ID number you took from the **About** t ab on the PA client. Use **`socks-proxy pa-customer-id 0`** to disable the license.

For More Information

- *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) socks-proxy accept-timeout 120
 ok
```

#(config) ssh-console

Synopsis

Configures the SSH host and client keys.

Syntax

```
#(config) ssh-console
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config ssh-console)
```

Subcommands

`#(config ssh-console)` **`create host-keypair`** {**`sshv1`** | **`sshv2`** | **`<Enter>`**}
Creates a host-keypair for the SSH console of the specified version.

`#(config ssh-console)` **`delete client-key`** *`username key_id`*
Deletes the client key with the specified username and key ID.

`#(config ssh-console)` **`delete legacy-client-key`** *`key_id`*
Deletes the legacy client key.

`#(config ssh-console)` **`delete director-client-key`** *`key_id`*
Deletes the Director client key.

`#(config ssh-console)` **`delete host-keypair`** {**`sshv1`** | **`sshv2`** | **`<Enter>`**}
Deletes the specified host keypair.

`#(config ssh-console)` **`inline`** {**`client-key`** *`<eof>`* | **`director-client-key`** *`<eof>`*}
Allows you add a client key or a Director client key using inline commands.

`#(config ssh-console)` **`view`** {**`client-key`** | **`director-client-key`** | **`host-public-key`** | **`user-list`** | **`versions-enabled`**}
Views the SSH console parameters.

For More Information

- *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*
- **`#(config ssh-console)`** on page 134

Example

`#(config ssh-console) view versions-enabled`

SSHv2 is enabled.

#(config) ssl

Synopsis

Use this command to configure HTTPS termination, including managing certificates, both self-signed and those from a Certificate Signing Authority (CSA).

To configure HTTPS termination, you must complete the following tasks:

- Configure a keyring
- Configure the SSL client
- Configure the HTTPS service

Note: To do these steps, you must have a serial or SSH connection; you cannot use Telnet.

Syntax

```
#(config) ssl
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config ssl)
```

Subcommands

`#(config ssl)` **`create ccl`** *`list_name`*
Creates a list to contain CA certificates.

`#(config ssl)` **`create certificate`** *`keyring_id`*
Creates a certificate. Certificates can be associated with a keyring.

You can create a self-signed certificate two ways: interactively or non-interactively.

Director uses non-interactive commands in profiles and overlays to create certificates.

`#(config ssl)` **`create crl`** *`crl_id`*
Create a Certificate Revocation List.

`#(config ssl)` **`create keyring`** {**`show`** | **`show-director`** | **`no-show`**} *`keyring_id`* [**`key_length`**]
Creates a keyring, with a keypair, where:

`show`: Keyrings created with this attribute are displayed in the `show configuration` output, meaning that the keyring can be included as part of a profile or overlay pushed by Director.

`show-director`: Keyrings created with this attribute are part of the `show configuration` output if the CLI connection is secure (SSH/RSA) and the command is issued from Director.

`no-show`: Keyrings created with this attribute are not displayed in the show configuration output and cannot be part of a profile. The `no-show` option is provided as additional security for environments where the keys will never be used outside of the particular SG appliance.

`#(config ssl)` **`create device-authentication-profile`** *`device_authentication_profile_name`* [*`keyring`*]
Creates a device authentication profile of the specified name and keyring. The keyring must already exist. If you do not specify a keyring, the certificate is put in the `appliance-key` keyring.

`#(config ssl)` **`create signing-request`** *`keyring_id`*
Creates a certificate signing request. The request must be associated with a keyring.

You can create a signing request two ways: interactively or non-interactively.

Director uses non-interactive commands in profiles and overlays to create signing requests.

`#(config ssl)` **`create ssl-client`** *`ssl_client_name`*
Associates the SSL client with a keyring. Only the default is permitted.

`#(config ssl)` **`delete ca-certificate`** *`name`*
Deletes a CA-certificate from the SG appliance.

`#(config ssl)` **`delete ccl`** *`list_name`*
Deletes a CCL list from the SG appliance.

`#(config ssl)` **`delete certificate`** *`keyring_id`*
Deletes the certificate associated with a keyring.

`#(config ssl)` **`delete crl`** *`list_name`*
Deletes the specified Certificate Revocation List.

`#(config ssl)` **`delete external-certificate`** *`name`*
Deletes an external certificate from the SG appliance.

`#(config ssl)` **`delete keyring`** *`keyring_id`*
Deletes a keyring, with a keypair.

`#(config ssl)` **`delete signing-request`** *`keyring_id`*
Deletes a certificate signing request.

`#(config ssl)` **`delete ssl-client`** *`ssl_client_name`*
Deletes an SSL client.

`#(config ssl)` **`edit ccl`** *`list_name`*
Changes the prompt. See **`#(config ssl ccl list_name)`** on page 332.

`#(config ssl)` **`edit crl`** *`crl_id`*
Changes the prompt. See **`#(config ssl crl_list_name)`** on page 333.

`#(config ssl)` **`edit device-authentication-profile`** `profile_name.`
`Changes the prompt. See`

`#(config ssl)` **`edit ssl-client`** *`ssl_client_name`*
Changes the prompt. Only default is permitted. See **`#(config ssl ssl__default_client_name)`** on page 335.

`#(config ssl)` **`exit`**
Exits configure ssl mode and returns to configure mode.

`#(config ssl)` **`inline ca-certificate`** *`name eof`*
Imports a CA certificate.

`#(config ssl)` **`inline certificate`** *`keyring_id eof`*
Imports a certificate.

`#(config ssl)` **`inline crl`** *`list_name`*
Imports a Certificate Revocation List.

`#(config ssl)` **`inline external-certificate`** *`name eof`*
Imports a certificate without the corresponding private key.

`#(config ssl)` **`inline keyring`** {**`show`** | **`show-director`** | **`no-show`**} *`keyring_id eof`*
Imports a keyring, where:

`show`: Keyrings created with this attribute are displayed in the `show configuration` output, meaning that the keyring can be included as part of a profile or overlay pushed by Director.

`show-director`: Keyrings created with this attribute are part of the `show configuration` output if the CLI connection is secure (SSH/RSA) and the command is issued from Director.

`no-show`: Keyrings created with this attribute are not displayed in the show configuration output and cannot be part of a profile. The `no-show` option is provided as additional security for environments where the keys will never be used outside of the particular SG appliance.

`eof`: End-of-file marker. This can be anything, as long as it doesn't also appear in the inline text. (If the *`eof`* appears in the inline text, the `inline` command completes at that point.)

`#(config ssl)` **`inline signing-request`** *`keyring_id eof`*
Imports the specified signing request.

`#(config ssl)` **`load crl`** *`crl_list`*
Loads the specified CRL list.

`#(config ssl)` **`proxy issuer-keyring`** *`keyring_name`*
Specifies the keyring to be used for SSL interception.

SGOS#(config ssl) **`request-appliance-certificate`**
Generates an appliance certificate.

`#(config ssl)` **`ssl-nego-timeout`** *`seconds`*
Configures the SSL-negotiation timeout period. The default is 300 seconds.

SGOS#(config ssl) **`view appliance-certificate-request`**
Displays the appliance certificate request generated by the `request-appliance-certificate` command.

`#(config ssl)` **`view ca-certificate`** *name*
Displays the Certificate Authority certificate.

`#(config ssl)` **`view ccl`**
Displays the CA-certificate lists.

`#(config ssl)` **`view certificate`** *keyring_id*
Displays the certificate.

`#(config ssl)` **`view crl`** [*`list_name`*]
Displays the specified Certificate Revocation List.

SGOS#(config ssl) **`view device-authentication-profile`**

`#(config ssl)` **`view external-certificate`** *`name`*
Displays the external certificate.

`#(config ssl)` **`view keypair`** {**`des`** | **`des3`** | **`unencrypted`**} *`keyring_id`* | *`keyring_id`*}
Displays the keypair. If you want to view the keypair in an encrypted format, you can optionally specify `des` or `des3` before the keyringID. If you specify either `des` or `des3`, you are prompted for the challenge entered when the keyring was created.

`#(config ssl)` **`view keyring`** [*`keyring_id`*]
Displays the keyring.

`#(config ssl)` **`view signing-request`** *`keyring_id`*
Displays the certificate signing request.

`#(config ssl)` **`view ssl-client`**
Displays summary information of SSL clients.

`#(config ssl)` **`view ssl-nego-timeout`**
Displays SSL negotiation timeout period status summary.

`#(config ssl)` **`view summary`** {**`ca-certificate`** | **`external-certificate`**} [*`name`*]
Displays a summary for all CA-certificate or external-certificate commands, or for the certificate name specified.

For More Information

- *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) ssl
SGOS#(config ssl) create keyring show keyring id [key length]
 ok
SGOS#(config ssl) view keyring keyring id
KeyringID: default
Is private key showable? yes
Have CSR? no
Have certificate? yes
Is certificate valid? yes
CA: Blue Coat SG810
Expiration Date: Jan 23 23:57:21 2013 GMT
Fingerprint: EB:BD:F8:2C:00:25:84:02:CB:82:3A:94:1E:7F:0D:E3
SGOS#(config ssl) exit
SGOS#(config)
```

#(config ssl ccl *list_name)*

Synopsis

Allows you to edit the CCL parameters.

Syntax

```
#(config) ssl
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config ssl) edit ccl list_name
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config ssl ccl list_name)
```

Subcommands

#(config ssl ccl *list_name*) add *ca_certificate_name*
Adds a CA certificate to this list. (The CA certificate must first be imported in configure ssl mode.)

#(config ssl ccl *list_name*) clear
Clears all CA certificates from the specified list.

#(config ssl ccl *list_name*) exit
Exits configure ssl ccl *list_name* mode and returns to ssl configure mode.

#(config ssl ccl *list_name*) view
Shows a summary of CA certificates in this list.

For More Information

- *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) ssl
SGOS#(config ssl) edit ccl list_name
SGOS#(config ssl ccl list_name) add CACert1
 ok
SGOS#(config ssl ccl list_name) exit
SGOS#(config ssl) exit
SGOS#(config)
```

#(config ssl *crl_list_name)*

Synopsis

Allows you to edit the specified Certificate Revocation List name.

Syntax

```
#(config) ssl
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config ssl)
```

```
edit crl crl_list_name
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config ssl crl_list_name)
```

Subcommands

`#(config ssl crl_list_name)` **`exit`**
Exits configure ssl crl *`crl_list_name`* mode and returns to ssl configure mode.

`#(config ssl crl_list_name)` **`inline`**
Imports a Certificate Revocation List.

`#(config ssl crl_list_name)` **`load`**
Downloads the specified Certificate Revocation List.

`#(config ssl crl_list_name)` **`path`**
Specifies the network path to download the specified Certificate Revocation List.

`#(config ssl crl_list_name)` **`view`**
View the specified Certificate Revocation List.

For More Information

- *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*

#(config ssl device-authentication-profile)

Synopsis

Allows you to edit a device authentication profile. Note that the built-in profile, **bluecoat-appliance-certificate**, cannot be edited.

Syntax

```
#(config) ssl
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config ssl)
```

```
edit device-authentication-profile profile_name
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config ssl profile_name)
```

Subcommands

`#(config ssl profile_name)` **cipher-suite** *cipher-suite*
Configures device authentication profile cipher suites. If you press <enter>, you can see the list of available ciphers. The default is AES256-SHA. You can choose more than one cipher suite.

`#(config ssl profile_name)` **ccl** *ccl_name*
Configures the device authentication profile CCL.

`#(config ssl profile_name)` **device-id** *device_ID*
Configure device authentication profile of the specific device ID.

`#(config ssl profile_name)` **exit**
Returns to the `# (config ssl)` prompt.

`#(config ssl profile_name)` **keyring-id** *keyring_ID*
Configures the device authentication profile in the specified keyring.

`#(config ssl profile_name)` **verify-peer** {**enable** | **disable**}
Enable or disable device authentication peer verification.

`#(config ssl profile_name)` **view**

For More Information

- *Volume 5: Advanced Networking*

Example

```
#(config device-auth test1) view
Name: test1
Keyring: appliance-key
CCL: appliance-ccl
Device-id: 4505060020 (4505060020)
Cipher suite: aes256-sha
Verify-peer: enabled
```

#(config ssl *ssl__default_client_name)*

Synopsis

Allows you to edit the SSL client parameters. Only the default is permitted.

Syntax

```
#(config) ssl
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config ssl)
```

```
edit ssl-client ssl_default_client_name
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config ssl ssl_default_client_name)
```

Subcommands

`#(config ssl ssl_default_client_name)` **`cipher-suite`**
Specifies the cipher suite to use. The default is to use all cipher suites. If you want to change the default, you have two choices:

- interactive mode
- non-interactive mode

Director uses non-interactive commands in profiles and overlays to create cipher suites.

The optional *`cipher-suite`* refers to the cipher-suites you want to use, space separated, such as `rc4-md5 exp-des-cbc-sha`. If you want to use the interactive mode, do not specify a cipher suite.

`#(config ssl ssl_default_client_name)` **`exit`**
Exits `configure ssl ssl-client ssl_default_client_name` mode and returns to `ssl configure` mode.

`#(config ssl ssl_default_client_name)` **`keyring-id`** *`keyring_id`*
Configures SSL client keyring id.

`#(config ssl ssl_default_client_name)` **`protocol`** {*`sslv2`* | *`sslv3`* | *`tlsv1`* | *`sslv2v3`* | *`sslv2tlsv1`*| *`sslv3tlsv1`* | *`sslv2v3tlsv1`*}
Configures SSL client protocol version.

`#(config ssl ssl_default_client_name)` **`view`**
Displays the SSL client details.

For More Information

- *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) ssl
SGOS#(config ssl) edit ssl-client ssl_default_client_name
SGOS#(config ssl ssl-client ssl_default_client_name) cipher-suite rc4-md5
exp-des-cbc-sha
 ok
SGOS#(config ssl ssl-client ssl_default_client_name) exit
SGOS#(config ssl) exit
SGOS#(config)
```

#(config) static-routes

Synopsis

Use this command to set the network path to download the static routes configuration file.

To use static routes on the SG appliance, you must create a routing table and place it on an HTTP server accessible to the device. The routing table is a text file that contains a list of IP addresses, subnet masks, and gateways. When you download a routing table, the table is stored in the device until it is replaced by downloading a new table.

The routing table is a simple text file containing a list of IP addresses, subnet masks, and gateways. A sample routing table is illustrated below:

```
10.63.0.0     255.255.0.0      10.63.158.213
10.64.0.0     255.255.0.0      10.63.158.213
10.65.0.0     255.255.0.0      10.63.158.226
```

When a routing table is loaded, all requested addresses are compared to the list, and routed based on the best match.

After the routing table is created, place it on an HTTP server so it can be downloaded to the device. To download the routing table to the SG appliance, use the `load` command.

Syntax

`#(config)` **`static-routes no path`**
Clears the network path location of the static route table

`#(config)` **`static-routes path`** *`url`*
Sets the network path location of the static route table to the specified URL.

For More Information

- *Volume 2: Proxies and Proxy Services*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) static-routes path 10.25.36.47/files/routes.txt
     ok
```

#(config) streaming

Synopsis

Use this command to configure general streaming settings and Microsoft Windows Media or RealNetworks Real Media settings.

Syntax

`#(config)` **`streaming max-client-bandwidth`** *`kbps`*
Sets the maximum client bandwidth permitted to *`kbps`*.

`#(config)` **`streaming max-gateway-bandwidth`** *`kbps`*
Sets the maximum gateway bandwidth permitted to *`kbps`*.

`#(config)` **`streaming multicast address-range`** *`first_address - last_address`*
The IP address range for the SG appliance's multicast-station. Default is from 224.2.128.0 and 224.2.255.255.

`#(config)` **`streaming multicast port-range`** *`first_port - last_port`*
Port range for the SG's multicast-station. Default is between 32768 and 65535.

`#(config)` **`streaming multicast ttl`** *`ttl`*
Time to live value for the multicast-station on the SG appliance, expressed in hops. Default is 5; a valid number is between 1 and 255.

`#(config)` **`streaming no max-client-bandwidth`**
Clears the current maximum client bandwidth setting.

`#(config)` **`streaming no max-gateway-bandwidth`**
Clears the current maximum gateway bandwidth setting.

`#(config)` **`streaming quicktime http-handoff`** {**`disable`** | **`enable`**}
Disables or enables QuickTime HTTP handoff.

`#(config)` **`streaming quicktime max-client-bandwidth`** *`kbps`*
Sets the maximum connections allowed.

`#(config)` **`streaming quicktime max-connections`** *`number`*
Sets the maximum client bandwidth allowed.

`#(config)` **`streaming quicktime max-gateway-bandwidth`** *`kbps`*
Sets the maximum gateway bandwidth allowed.

`#(config)` **`streaming quicktime no`** {**`max-client-bandwidth`** | **`max-connections`** | **`max-gateway-bandwidth`**}
Negates QuickTime parameters.

`#(config)` **`streaming real-media http-handoff`** {**`disable`** | **`enable`**}
Disables or enables Real Media HTTP handoff.

`#(config)` **`streaming real-media log-forwarding`** {**`disable`** | **`enable`**}
Sets Real Media client log forwarding.

`#(config)` **`streaming real-media max-client-bandwidth`** *`kbps`*
Limits the total bandwidth used by all connected clients. Changing the setting to no max-client-bandwidth uses the maximum available bandwidth. Zero (0) is not an accepted value

`#(config)` **`streaming real-media max-connections`** *`number`*
Limits the concurrent number of client connections. Changing the setting to `no max-connections` uses the maximum available bandwidth. Zero (0) is not an accepted value.

`#(config)` **`streaming real-media max-gateway-bandwidth`** *`kbps`*
Limits the total bandwidth used between the proxy and the gateway. Changing the setting to `no max-gateway-bandwidth`, uses the maximum available bandwidth. Zero (0) is not an accepted value.

`#(config)` **`streaming real-media multicast`** {**`disable`** | **`enable`**}
Disables or enables Real Media client multicast support.

`#(config)` **`streaming real-media no`** {**`max-client-bandwidth`** | **`max-connections`** | **`max-gateway-bandwidth`** | **`refresh-interval`**}
Negates Real Media parameters.

`#(config)` **`streaming real-media refresh-interval`** *`hours`*
Sets the streaming content refresh interval.

`#(config)` **`streaming windows-media asx-rewrite`** `number in_addr cache_proto cache_addr [cache-port]`
Provides proxy support for Windows Player 6.4.

If your environment does not use a Layer 4 switch or WCCP, the SG appliance can operate as a proxy for Windows Media Player 6.4 clients by rewriting the `.asx` file (which links Web pages to Windows Media ASF files) to point to the Windows Media streaming media cache rather than the Windows Media server.

`number` can be any positive number. It defines the priority of all the asx-rewrite rules. Smaller numbers indicate higher priority. *`in_addr`* specifies the hostname. It can have a maximum of one wildcard character. *`cache_proto`* rewrites the protocol on the SG appliance and can take any of the following forms:

`mmsu` (MMS-UDP)

`mmst` (MMS-TCP)

`http` (HTTP)

`mms` (MMS-UDP or MMS-TCP)

`cache_addr` rewrites the address on the SG appliance.

`#(config)` **`streaming windows-media broadcast-alias`** *`alias url loops date time`*
Enables scheduled live unicast or multicast transmission of video-on-demand content.

`alias` must be unique. *`url`* specifies the address of the video-on-demand stream. *`loops`* specifies the number of times the stream should be played back. 0 means forever. *`date`* specifies the broadcast alias starting date. To specify multiple starting dates, enter the date as a comma-separated string. *`date`* can take any of the following formats:

yyyy-mm-dd

today

`time` specifies the broadcast-alias starting time. To specify multiple starting times within the same date, enter the time as a comma-separated string. No spaces are permitted. *time* can take any of the following formats:

`hh:mm`

`midnight, 12am, 1am, 2am, 3am, 4am, 5am, 6am, 7am, 8am, 9am, 10am, 11am, noon, 12pm, 1pm, 2pm, 3pm, 4pm, 5pm, 6pm, 7pm, 8pm, 9pm, 10pm, 11pm`.

`#(config)` **`streaming windows-media http-handoff`** {**`disable`** | **`enable`**}
Allows the Windows Media module to control the HTTP port when Windows Media streaming content is present. The default is enabled.

`#(config)` **`streaming windows-media live-retransmit`** {**`disable`** | **`enable`**}
Allows the SG appliance to retransmit dropped packets sent through MMS-UDP for unicast. The default is enabled.

#(config) **streaming windows-media log-compatibility** {**disable** | **enable**}
Disables or enables access log compatibility. When log-compatibility is enabled, the SG appliance generates the MMS log the same way as Windows Media Server does. Three fields are affected when log-compatibility is enabled:

c-ip x-wm-c-ip (client address derived from client log)

c-dns x-wm-c-dns (client hostname derived from client log)

c-uri-stem cs-uri (use full URI instead of just the path)

#(config) **streaming windows-media log-forwarding** {**disable** | **enable**}
Enables or disables forwarding of the client log to the origin media server.

#(config) **streaming windows-media max-client-bandwidth** *kpbs*
Sets the maximum client bandwidth permitted to *kbps*.

#(config) **streaming windows-media max-connections** *number*
Limits the concurrent number of client connections. If this variable is set to 0, you effectively lock out all client connections to the SG appliance. To allow maximum client bandwidth, enter **streaming windows-media no max-connections**.

#(config) **streaming windows-media max-fast-bandwidth** *kpbs*
Sets the maximum fast start bandwidth per player.

#(config) **streaming windows-media max-gateway-bandwidth** *kpbs*
Sets the maximum limit, in kilobits per second (Kbps), for the amount of bandwidth Windows Media uses to send requests to its gateway. If this variable is set to 0, you effectively prevent the SG appliance from initiating any connections to the gateway. To allow maximum gateway bandwidth, enter **streaming windows-media no max-gateway-bandwidth**.

#(config) **streaming windows-media multicast-alias** *alias url* [preload]
Creates an alias on the SG appliance that reflects the multicast station on the origin content server.

#(config) **streaming windows-media multicast-station** *name* {*alias* | *url*} *ip port ttl*
Enables multicast transmission of Windows Media content from the SG appliance. *name* specifies the name of the alias. It must be unique. *alias* can be a unicast alias, a multicast-alias or a broadcast alias, as well as a *url* to a live stream source. *ip* is an optional parameter and specifies the multicast station's IP address. *port* specifies the multicast station's port value address. *ttl* specifies the multicast-station's time-to-live value, expressed in hops (and must be a valid number between 1 and 255). The default *ttl* is 5.

#(config) **streaming windows-media no asx-rewrite** *number*
Deletes the ASX rewrite rule associated with *number*.

#(config) **streaming windows-media no broadcast-alias** *alias*
Deletes the broadcast alias rule associated with *alias*.

#(config) **streaming windows-media no max-client-bandwidth**
Negates maximum client bandwidth settings.

#(config) **streaming windows-media no max-connections**
Negates maximum connections settings.

#(config) **streaming windows-media no max-gateway-bandwidth**
Negates maximum gateway bandwidth settings.

#(config) **streaming windows-media no multicast-alias** *alias*
Deletes the multicast alias rule associated with *alias*.

#(config) **streaming windows-media no multicast-station** *name*
Deletes the multicast station rule associated with *name*.

#(config) **streaming windows-media no refresh-interval**
Sets the current Windows Media refresh interval to “never refresh.”

`#(config)` **`streaming windows-media no server-auth-type`** *`cache_ip_address`*
Clears the authentication type associated with *`cache_ip_address`*.

`#(config)` **`streaming windows-media no unicast-alias`** *`alias`*
Deletes the unicast alias rule associated with *`alias`*. The name of the alias, such as "welcome1" that is created on the SG appliance and reflects the content specified by the URL. The protocol is specified by the URL if the protocol is `mmst`, `mmsu`, or `http`. If the protocol is `mms`, the same protocol as the client is used.

`#(config)` **`streaming windows-media refresh-interval`** *`hours`*
Checks the refresh interval for cached streaming content. *`hours`* must be a floating point number to specify refresh interval. 0 means always check for freshness.

`#(config)` **`streaming windows-media server-auth-type`** {**`basic`** | **`ntlm`**} *`cache_ip_address`*
Sets the authentication type of the SG appliance indicated by *`cache_ip_address`* to BASIC or NTLM.

`#(config)` **`streaming windows-media server-thinning`** {**`disable`** | **`enable`**}
Disables or enables server thinning.

`#(config)` **`streaming windows-media unicast-alias`** *`alias url`*
Creates an alias on the SG appliance that reflects the content specified by the URL. When a client requests the alias content, the SG appliance uses the URL specified in the `unicast-alias` command to request the content from the origin streaming server.

For More Information

- *Volume 3: Web Communication Proxies*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) streaming windows-media http-handoff enable
 ok
SGOS#(config) streaming windows-media live-retransmit disable
 ok
SGOS#(config) streaming windows-media log-forwarding disable
 ok
SGOS#(config) streaming windows-media max-connections 1600
 ok
SGOS#(config) streaming windows-media no max-connections
 ok
```

#(config) tcp-ip

Synopsis

Use the following commands to configure your TCP-IP settings.

Syntax

`#(config)` **`tcp-ip icmp-bcast-echo`** {**`disable`** | **`enable`**}
Enables or disables ICMP broadcast echo responses.

`#(config)` **`tcp-ip icmp-tstamp-echo`** {**`disable`** | **`enable`**}
Enables or disables ICMP timestamp echo responses.

`#(config)` **`tcp-ip ip-forwarding`** {**`disable`** | **`enable`**}
Enables or disables IP-forwarding.

`#(config)` **`tcp-ip pmtu-discovery`** {**`disable`** | **`enable`**}
Enables or disables Path MTU Discovery.

`#(config)` **`tcp-ip rfc-1323`** {**`disable`** | **`enable`**}
Enables or disables RFC-1323 support (satellite communications).

`#(config)` **`tcp-ip tcp-newreno`** {**`disable`** | **`enable`**}
Enables or disables TCP NewReno support (improved fast recovery).

`#(config)` **`tcp-ip tcp-2msl`** *`seconds`*
Specifies the `time_wait` value for a TCP connection before completely closing.

`#(config)` **`tcp-ip tcp-loss-recovery-mode`** {**`aggressive`** | **`enhanced`** | **`normal`**}
Helps to recover throughput efficiently after packet losses occur and also addresses performance problems due to a single packet loss during a large transfer over long delay pipes. The feature is disabled (set to `normal`) by default.

`#(config)` **`tcp-ip window-size`** *`window_size`*
Specifies the TCP window size for satellite communications.

For More Information

- *Volume 5: Advanced Networking*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) tcp-ip ip-forwarding enable
 ok
SGOS#(config) tcp-ip rfc-1323 enable
 ok
```

#(config) tcp-rtt

Synopsis

Use this command to configure the number of TCP round trip time ticks.

Syntax

`#(config)` **`tcp-rtt`** *`num_500ms_ticks`*

Indicates the default TCP Round Trip Time in ticks.

For More Information

- *Volume 5: Advanced Networking*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) tcp-rtt 500
 ok
```

#(config) tcp-rtt-use

Synopsis

Use this command to enable or disable the default TCP Round Trip Time.

Syntax

`#(config)` **`tcp-rtt-use`** {**`disable`** | **`enable`**}

Disables or enables using fixed RTT.

For More Information

- *Volume 5: Advanced Networking*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) tcp-rtt-use enable
 ok
```

#(config) timezone

Synopsis

Use this command to set the local time zone on the SG appliance.

Syntax

`#(config)` **`timezone`** *`timezone_number`*

Enables you to set the local time zone. (Use `(config) show timezones` to display a list of supported timezones.)

For More Information

- *Volume 1: Getting Started*
- **`#(config)clock`** on page 129

Example

```
SGOS#(config) timezone 3
 ok
```

#(config) upgrade-path

Synopsis

Use this command to specify the network path to download system software.

Syntax

`#(config)` **`upgrade-path`** *`url`*

Indicates the network path to use to download SG system software.

Example

```
SGOS#(config) upgrade-path 10.25.36.47
 ok
```

#(config) virtual-ip

Synopsis

This command allows you to configure virtual IP addresses.

Syntax

`#(config)` **`virtual-ip address`** *`ip_address`*
Specifies the virtual IP to add.

`#(config)` **`virtual-ip clear`**
Removes all virtual IP addresses.

`#(config)` **`virtual-ip no address`** *`ip_address`*
Removes the specified virtual IP from the list.

For More Information

- *Volume 5: Advanced Networking*
- **`#(config) failover`** on page 183

Example

```
SGOS#(config) virtual-ip address 10.25.36.47
 ok
```

#(config) wccp

Synopsis

The SG appliance can be configured to participate in a WCCP (Web Cache Control Protocol) scheme, where a WCCP-capable router collaborates with a set of WCCP-configured SG appliance to service requests. WCCP is a Cisco-developed protocol. For more information about WCCP, refer to *Volume 5: Advanced Networking*.

After you have created the WCCP configuration file, place the file on an HTTP server so it can be downloaded to the SG appliance. To download the WCCP configuration to the SG appliance, use the `load` command.

Syntax

`#(config)` **`wccp disable`**
Disables WCCP.

`#(config)` **`wccp enable`**
Enables WCCP.

`#(config)` **`wccp no path`**
Negates certain WCCP settings.

`#(config)` **`wccp path`** *`url`*
Specifies the network path from which to download WCCP settings.

For More Information

- *Volume 5: Advanced Networking*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) wccp path 10.25.36.47/files/wccp.txt
 ok
```